

Gary M. Hoffman (*Pro Hac Vice*)  
Kenneth W. Brothers (*Pro Hac Vice*)  
DICKSTEIN SHAPIRO MORIN  
& OSHINSKY, LLP  
2101 L Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20037-1526  
Phone (202) 785-9700  
Fax (202) 887-0689

Edward A. Meilman (*Pro Hac Vice*)  
DICKSTEIN SHAPIRO MORIN  
& OSHINSKY, LLP  
1177 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10036-2714  
Phone (212) 835-1400  
Fax (212) 997-9880

Jeffrey B. Demain, State Bar No. 126715  
Jonathan Weissglass, State Bar No. 185008  
ALTSHULER, BERZON, NUSSBAUM, RUBIN & DEMAINE  
177 Post Street, Suite 300  
San Francisco, California 94108  
Phone (415) 421-7151  
Fax (415) 362-8064

Attorneys for Ricoh Company, Ltd.

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA  
SAN FRANCISCO DIVISION

\_\_\_\_\_  
RICOH COMPANY, LTD.,

Plaintiff,

vs.

\_\_\_\_\_  
AEROFLEX INC., et al.,

Defendants.

\_\_\_\_\_  
SYNOPTIS, INC.,

Plaintiff,

vs.

\_\_\_\_\_  
RICOH COMPANY, LTD.,

Defendant.

CASE NO. CV 03-4669-MJJ (EMC)

CASE NO. CV-03-2289- MJJ (EMC)

DECLARATION OF GARY M. HOFFMAN IN  
SUPPORT OF RICOH'S OPPOSITION TO  
SYNOPTIS' THIRD MOTION TO STAY

1 Gary M. Hoffman declares as follows:

2 1. My name is Gary M. Hoffman, an attorney with the law firm of Dickstein, Shapiro,  
3 Morin & Oshinsky, LLP, counsel for Ricoh Company Limited. I am over the age of 21 and am  
4 competent to make this declaration. Based on my personal knowledge and information, I hereby declare  
5 to all the facts in this declaration.

6 2. In one recent reexamination proceeding being handled by the firm, after granting the  
7 request, over one year later the PTO finally acted on the merits of the patent, allowing all of the original  
8 claims.

9 3. In two other reexamination proceedings being handled by the firm, while the PTO has  
10 informally indicated that all of the original claims will be allowed, we have been waiting for official  
11 action for two years since the requests were filed.

12 4. In Reexamination Serial No. 90/006,632 being handled by the firm, an accused infringer  
13 filed a reexamination request on May 13, 2003 which was granted on August 8, 2003 yet the first  
14 examiner's action on the merits was not issued until one year later on August 5, 2004; that proceeding is  
15 still pending today as the third anniversary of its filing rapidly approaches.

16 5. In January 2003, Ricoh sued three groups of ASIC manufacturers in Delaware  
17 (collectively, "the Aeroflex defendants"), where most were incorporated. By March 2003, Synopsys  
18 had agreed to indemnify all of the Aeroflex defendants and assumed control of the litigation.

19 6. The Aeroflex defendants filed their answers and declaratory judgment counterclaims in  
20 March 2003 and submitted initial disclosures in May 2003. Although those defendants resisted  
21 infringement discovery, they noticed and took the Rule 30(b)(6) deposition of Ricoh in June 2003, and  
22 started producing a wide range of alleged prior art during the summer of 2003.

23 7. For a year between May 2003 and May 2004, the parties engaged in a wide range of  
24 discovery, exchanging more than a dozen sets of written discovery, producing a large volume of  
25 documents, and deposing twelve witnesses.

26 8. Ricoh estimates that all of the parties have spent over \$15 million litigating this case.

27 9. Synopsys' first request for reexamination is based on a 1984 PhD thesis by Thaddeus  
28 Kowalski, and a 1985 article by Kowalski and others. Dr. Kowalski has acted as a consultant to

1 Synopsys, and was retained as an expert for Synopsys in the summer of 2003. The two articles cited in  
2 the reexamination request were first produced in this litigation by Synopsys on July 11, 2003.

3 10. Synopsys deposed the inventors named in the '432 patent in May 2004.

4 11. Synopsys' second request for reexamination relies on two related articles by Mitchell,  
5 Steinberg and Shulman entitled, "A Knowledge-Based Approach to Design," which describe an  
6 experimental system developed at Rutgers University, known as "VEXED" (an acronym for "Vlsi  
7 EXpert EDitor"). Synopsys produced at least one article describing this very prior art system on July 11,  
8 2003.

9 12. The first request for reexamination – dated January 17, 2006 – was filed by a patent law  
10 firm in Washington D.C. Although neither that request nor Synopsys' motion disclose who ultimately  
11 was responsible for (and paid for) that filing, during a telephone conference that I had with the attorney  
12 who signed the request, that attorney effectively acknowledged to me that it had been filed at the behest  
13 of Synopsys. The second request for reexamination – dated February 22, 2006 – likewise was filed by  
14 the same firm, also at the behest of Synopsys.

15 13. Synopsys could have filed its request when the Aeroflex defendants were first served  
16 with the complaint over three years ago on January 21, 2003. Instead, Synopsys decided to litigate this  
17 case for over three years, during which time they sought two stays of this litigation. Synopsys required  
18 this Court to establish a pretrial schedule, prepare for, conduct, and consider the parties' claims  
19 construction positions, resolve numerous discovery disputes, and set the November 2006 trial date.

20 14. Based upon our firm's personal experience with reexaminations, we have seen no  
21 increase in speed in processing reexaminations. Because the PTO has such a backlog of reexaminations,  
22 and because it works on the oldest requests first, it is highly likely that there will be no action on the two  
23 Synopsys requests for more than a year.

24 15. Ricoh has granted multiple licenses to the '432 patent.

25 16. Attached hereto as Ex. 1 is a true and correct copy of the May 30, 2003 Scheduling Order  
26 issued by the Delaware court, setting trial for October 12, 2004.

27 17. Attached hereto as Ex. 2 is a true and correct copy of the February 21, 2005, letter from  
28 Denise De Mory to Kenneth Brothers.

1 18. Attached hereto as Ex. 3 is a true and correct copy of section 2246 of the Manual of  
2 Patent Examination and Procedure.

3 19. Attached hereto as Ex. 4 is a true and correct copy of the USPTO Performance and  
4 Accountability Report for Fiscal Year 2005

5 20. Attached hereto as Ex. 5 is a true and correct copy of USPTO *Ex Parte* Reexamination  
6 Filing Data – March 21, 2004.

7 21. Attached hereto as Ex. 6 is a true and correct copy of an Order Denying Vicon Industries,  
8 Inc.'s Motion to Stay, *Lectrolarm v. Vicon*, Slip Op. 03-2330 (W.D. Tn. Sept. 8, 2005).

9 22. Attached hereto as Ex. 7 is a true and correct copy of the Supplemental Preliminary  
10 Invalidity Contentions of Synopsys and the Customer Defendants, served on July 7, 2004

11 I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the  
12 foregoing is true and correct. Signed at Washington, D.C. on March 14, 2006.

13  
14 /s/ Gary M. Hoffman  
15 Gary M. Hoffman  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28





56

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE

RICOH COMPANY, LTD. )

Plaintiff, )

v. )

AEROFLEX INCORPORATED, AMI )  
SEMICONDUCTOR, INC., MATROX )  
ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS LTD., )  
MATROX GRAPHICS INC., MATROX )  
INTERNATIONAL CORP. and )  
MATROX TECH, INC. )

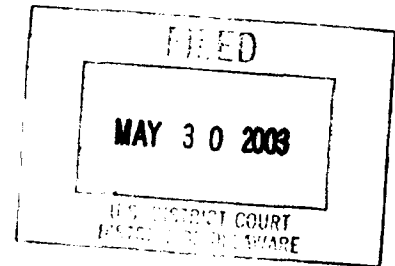
Defendants. )

RECEIVED

MAY 30 2003

Robert W. Whetzel

C.A. No.03-103-GMS



SCHEDULING ORDER

This 30<sup>th</sup> day of May 2003, the Court having conducted an initial Rule 16 scheduling and planning conference pursuant to Local Rule 16.2(b) on May 16, 2003, and the parties having determined after discussion that the matter cannot be resolved at this juncture by settlement, voluntary mediation or binding arbitration;

IT IS ORDERED that:

1. **Rule 26(a) Initial Disclosures.** Unless otherwise agreed to by the parties, they shall make their initial disclosures pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 26(a) on or before May 30, 2003.
2. **Joinder of other Parties and Amendment of Pleadings.** All motions to join other parties and amend the pleadings shall be filed on or before July 30, 2003.
3. **Reliance Upon Advice of Counsel.** Defendants shall inform plaintiff whether they intend to rely upon advice of counsel as a defense to willful infringement no later than

December 9, 2003. If defendants elect to rely on advice of counsel as a defense to willful infringement, defendants shall produce any such opinions on which defendants intend to rely to plaintiff no later than December 19, 2003.

4. **Markman Claim Construction Hearing.** A *Markman* claim construction hearing shall be held on March 2, 2004 at 9:30 a.m. The *Markman* hearing is scheduled for a total of not more than 1 day. The parties shall meet and confer regarding narrowing and reducing the number of claim construction issues no later than January 5, 2004 and shall exchange initial claim charts no later than January 12, 2004. On or before January 20, 2004, the parties shall submit a final joint claim chart which shall include citations to intrinsic evidence. The parties shall exchange opening claim construction briefs on January 23, 2004, and the answering claim construction briefs on February 6, 2004.

5. **Discovery.** All fact discovery in this case shall be initiated so that it will be completed on or before January 9, 2004. Opening expert reports shall be exchanged on March 22, 2004 and rebuttal expert reports shall be exchanged on April 23, 2004. Expert Discovery in this case shall be initiated so that it will be completed on or before June 23, 2004. The total time allowed for depositions shall be 240 hours per side, excluding expert discovery, unless extended by agreement of the parties.

a. **Discovery Disputes.** Should counsel find they are unable to resolve a discovery dispute, the party seeking the relief shall contact chambers at (302) 573-6470 to schedule a telephone conference. Not less than forty-eight hours prior to the conference, by hand delivery or facsimile at (302) 573-6472, the party seeking relief shall file with the Court a letter agenda not to exceed two (2) pages outlining the issues in dispute. Should the Court find further

briefing necessary upon conclusion of the telephone conference, the Court shall order the party seeking relief to file with the Court a **TWO PAGE LETTER**, exclusive of exhibits, describing the issues in contention. The responding party shall file within five (5) days from the date of service of the opening letter an answering letter of no more than **TWO PAGES**. The party seeking relief may then file a reply letter of no more than **TWO PAGES** within three (3) days from the date of service of the answering letter.

6. **Confidential Information and Papers filed under Seal.** Should counsel find it will be necessary to apply to the Court for a protective order specifying terms and conditions for the disclosure of confidential information, they should confer and attempt to reach an agreement on a proposed form of order and submit it to the Court within 10 days from the date of this order. When filing papers under seal, counsel should deliver to the Clerk an original and two copies of the papers.

**If after making a diligent effort the parties are unable to agree on the contents of the joint proposed protective order, then they shall follow the dispute resolution process outlined in paragraph 5(a).**

7. **Settlement Conference.** Pursuant to 28 U. S.C. §636, this matter is referred to the United States Magistrate for the purpose of exploring the possibility of a settlement. If the parties agree that the possibility of settlement may be enhanced by such referral, the parties shall contact Magistrate Judge Thyng to schedule a settlement conference with counsel and clients.

8. **Summary Judgment Motions.** Prior to filing any summary judgment motion, the parties must submit letter briefs seeking permission to file the motion. The opening letter brief shall be no longer than five (5) pages and shall be filed with the Court no later than

February 12, 2004. Answering letter briefs shall be no longer than five (5) pages and filed with the Court no later than February 27, 2004. Reply letter briefs shall be no longer than three (3) pages and filed with the Court on or before March 8, 2004. The Court shall hold a status conference to hear argument and to determine whether the filing of any motion will be permitted on March 23, 2004 at 11:00 a.m. **Unless the Court directs otherwise, no letter requests to file a motion for summary judgment may be filed at a time before the dates set forth in paragraph 8.**

9. **Case Dispositive Motions.** Should the Court permit the filing of summary judgment motions an opening brief and affidavits, if any, in support of the motion shall be served and filed on or before April 2, 2004. Parties must submit an original and two (2) copies. Briefing will be presented pursuant to the Court's Local Rules, unless the parties agree to an alternative briefing schedule. Any such agreement shall be in writing and filed with the Court for approval.

10. **Applications by Motion.** Except as provided in this Order or for matters relating to scheduling, any application to the Court shall be by written -motion filed with the Clerk. Unless otherwise requested by the Court, counsel shall not deliver copies of papers or correspondence to Chambers. Any non-dispositive motion should contain the statement required by Local Rule 7.1.1.

11. **Oral Argument.** If the Court believes that oral argument is necessary, the Court will schedule a hearing Pursuant to Local Rule 7.1.4.

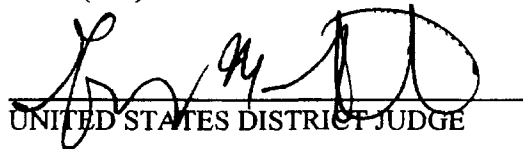
12. **Status/Daubert Conference.** On or before June 30, 2004, the parties shall meet and confer on any Daubert issues and motion in limine issues that any party wants to raise. On or before July 2, 2004, the parties shall submit a joint agenda identifying any Daubert issues that the

parties intend to raise. The Court will hold a telephone conference on July 7, 2004 at 11:00 a.m. to discuss Daubert issues identified in the joint agenda.

13. **Pretrial Conference.** On September 13, 2004, the Court will hold a Pretrial Conference in Chambers with counsel beginning at 9:30 a.m. Unless otherwise ordered by the Court, the parties should assume that filing the pretrial order satisfies the pretrial disclosure requirement in Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 26(a)(3). Thirty (30) days before the joint proposed pretrial order is due, plaintiff's counsel shall forward to defendants' counsel a draft of the pretrial order containing the information plaintiff proposes to include in the draft. Defendants' counsel shall, in turn, provide to plaintiff's counsel any comments on the plaintiff's draft as well as the information defendants propose to include in the proposed pretrial order. *Motions in limine:* No party shall file more than ten (10) motions in limine. Briefs (opening, answering and reply) on all motions *in limine* shall be filed by August 6, 2004. Opening and answering briefs shall not exceed five (5) pages and reply briefs shall not exceed three (3) pages. The parties shall file with the Court the joint proposed final pretrial order with the information required by the form of Final Pretrial Order which accompanies this Scheduling Order on or before August 16, 2004.

14. **Trial.** This matter is scheduled for a seven day jury trial beginning at 9:00 a.m. on October 12, 2004.

15. **Scheduling.** The parties shall direct any requests or questions regarding the scheduling and management of this matter to Chambers at (302) 573-6470.

  
UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE





525 Market Street  
Suite 3600  
San Francisco, CA 94105-2708  
www.howrey.com

---

**Denise M. De Mory**  
Partner

T 415.848.4983

F 415.848.4999

demoryd@howrey.com

File 06816.0060.000000

February 21, 2006

**VIA PDF**

Kenneth W. Brothers, Esq.  
Dickstein Shapiro Morin & Oshinsky LLP  
2101 L Street, N.W.  
Washington, DC 20037-1526

**Re: *Synopsys v. Ricoh Company, Ltd.*,  
Case No. C03-2289 MJJ (EMC)  
*Ricoh Company, Ltd. v. Aeroflex, Inc., et al.*,  
Case No. C03-4669 MJJ (EMC)**

---

Dear Ken:

As you are aware it may be necessary to produce a substantial amount of additional information relating to products, the designs for which were either: (1) synthesized, in whole or in part, by Flextronics prior to AMI's asset purchase relating to Flextronics ("the Flextronics Chips") that AMI now sells in the United States; or (2) synthesized, in whole or in part, by non-US entities related to named party AMI and sold by AMI in the United States ("Non-US AMI Chips"). We are writing to begin to discuss our concerns about doing this additional discovery.

With regard to the Flextronics Chips, our investigation as to these chips – and ultimately discovery as to these chips – is complicated by the fact that this was just an asset purchase. Many of the Flextronics employees did not become AMI employees, and thus, we are having a difficult time tracking down all the facts relating to these chips. In addition, because Flextronics facilities were closed or moved, locating documents is also proving to be quite difficult.

With regard to the Non-US AMI Chips, our preliminary investigation with regard to these chips lead us to believe that trips to many different countries, likely including Belgium, Czech Republic, Israel, Switzerland, Germany, Canada, Bulgaria, and Colorado, are going to be required both to collect documents and information and also for formal discovery.

Investigations and discovery with regard to both the Flextronics Chips and the Non-US AMI Chips is going to be very burdensome and expensive and the reality is that it is going to take time – probably several months. As you know, Synopsys has expended significant financial resources and both Synopsys and the Customer Defendants have already invested substantial time and personnel resources in meeting your discovery demands. Somewhere in the neighborhood of 8,000,000 pages of documents have been produced, we have responded to all of your written discovery and supplemented our responses several time, and have appeared for well

AMSTERDAM BRUSSELS CHICAGO EAST PALO ALTO HOUSTON IRVINE LONDON  
LOS ANGELES NORTHERN VIRGINIA PARIS SAN FRANCISCO TAIPEI WASHINGTON, DC



Kenneth W. Brothers, Esq.  
February 21, 2006  
Page 2

over 100 hours of deposition. As you likely know from your own expenses, this has cost millions of dollars.

Despite this, to date, we do not have a single meaningful infringement contention. We have only four boxes of documents, and you are outright stonewalling on all of the Synopsys and Customer Defendant discovery served in December. While we will raise all of your abuses with the Court in due course, regardless of whether you agree that they are abuses or not, the objective fact remains that we have given you access to substantial discovery, and you have given us very little.

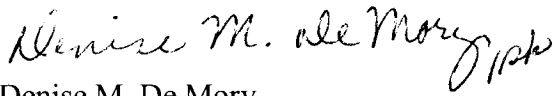
Not surprisingly, we are quite reticent to embark on further costly discovery, which we quite frankly believe is a fishing expedition, relating to the Flextronics Chips and the Non-US AMI Chips. Moreover, we absolutely can not do this discovery and maintain the same schedule that we have. Given the progress with respect to the 200+ chips that Ricoh claims are the accused products and for which particularized final infringement charts will be required, it is Synopsys and the Customer Defendant's belief that we need to get to end of the road on those 200+ chips.

Balancing all these concerns, we have the following proposal:

1. We proceed and complete discovery as currently scheduled as to the 200+ chips that are already identified.
2. We agree to extend the trial date and all other dates that are set after the close of discovery by 120 days. Within 30 days after the currently set close of discovery, AMI will produce product declarations and produce document commensurate in scope with the documents that have been produced in discovery with regard to the other chips for which discovery has been provided.

Please let me know if this general framework is acceptable to you, and then we can work out the specific details. If it is not and if we can not reach some reasonable agreement regarding timing for this additional discovery, we will be forced to seek a protective order.

Very truly yours,

  
Denise M. De Mory

DMD:plk

cc: Gary Hoffman, Esq. (via e-mail only)  
Edward Meilman, Esq. (via e-mail only)  
Eric Oliver, Esq. (via e-mail only)  
DeAnna Allen, Esq. (via e-mail only)  
Michael Weinstein, Esq. (via e-mail only)  
Seymour Seyoum (via e-mail only)



## 2244 Prior Art on Which the Determination Is Based [R-2]

The determination whether or not “a substantial new question of patentability” is present can be based upon any prior art patents or printed publications. \*35 U.S.C. 303(a) and 37 CFR 1.515(a) provide that the determination on a request will be made “with or without consideration of other patents or printed publications,” i.e., other than those relied upon in the request. The examiner is not limited in making the determination \*\*based on the patents and printed publications relied on in the request. The examiner can find “a substantial new question of patentability” based upon the prior art patents or printed publications relied on in the request, a combination of the prior art relied on in the request and other prior art found elsewhere, or based entirely on different patents or printed publications. The primary source of patents and printed publications used in making the determination are those relied on in the request. \*\*For reexamination ordered on or after November 2, 2002, see MPEP § 2242, subsection II.A. for a discussion of “old art.” The examiner can also consider any patents and printed publications of record in the patent file from submissions under 37 CFR 1.501 which are in compliance with 37 CFR 1.98 in making the determination. If the examiner believes that additional prior art patents and publications can be readily obtained by searching to supply any deficiencies in the prior art cited in the request, the examiner can perform such an additional search. Such a search should be limited to that area most likely to contain the deficiency of the prior art previously considered and should be made only where there is a reasonable likelihood that prior art can be found to supply any deficiency necessary to “a substantial new question of patentability.”

The determination should be made on the claims in effect at the time the decision is made (37 CFR 1.515(a)).

The \*\* >Director of the USPTO< has the authority to order reexamination only in those cases which raise a substantial new question of patentability. The substantial new question of patentability requirement protects patentees from having to respond to, or participate in unjustified reexaminations. See, e.g.,

*Patlex Corp. v. Mossinghoff*, 771 F.2d 480, 226 USPQ 985 (Fed. Cir. 1985).

## 2245 Processing of Decision [R-3]

After the examiner has prepared the decision and proofread and signed the typed version, the reexamination file and decision are given to the Technology Center’s (TC’s) reexamination clerk for coordinating the clerical processing carried out by the technical support staff.

The technical support staff then prints the heading on the decision by using the computer terminal. If the request was made by a third party, the technical support staff makes \* copies >for both the patent owner and the requester< of any prior art documents not already supplied by or to the patent owner or requester. If the patent owner filed the request, only \*\*>a patent owner copy is< required.

A copy of the decision is then mailed to the patent owner and to any third party, along with any required copies of prior art documents. The original signed copy of the decision and a copy of any prior art enclosed is made of record in the reexamination \*>electronic file (file history)<.

\*\*

## 2246 Decision Ordering Reexamination [R-3]

*35 U.S.C. 304. Reexamination order by Director.*

If, in a determination made under the provisions of subsection 303(a) of this title, the Director finds that a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of a patent is raised, the determination will include an order for reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. The patent owner will be given a reasonable period, not less than two months from the date a copy of the determination is given or mailed to him, within which he may file a statement on such question, including any amendment to his patent and new claim or claims he may wish to propose, for consideration in the reexamination. If the patent owner files such a statement, he promptly will serve a copy of it on the person who has requested reexamination under the provisions of section 302 of this title. Within a period of two months from the date of service, that person may file and have considered in the reexamination a reply to any statement filed by the patent owner. That person promptly will serve on the patent owner a copy of any reply filed.

*37 CFR 1.525. Order for ex parte reexamination.*

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found pursuant to § 1.515 or § 1.520, the determination will include an order for *ex parte* reexamination of the patent for resolution of the

## CITATION OF PRIOR ART AND EX PARTE REEXAMINATION OF PATENTS

2246

question. If the order for *ex parte* reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to § 1.515(c), the *ex parte* reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under § 1.515(a).

(b) The notice published in the *Official Gazette* under § 1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice and *ex parte* reexamination will proceed.

If \*>a< request >for reexamination< is granted, the \*>examiner's decision granting the request< will conclude that a substantial new question of patentability has been raised by >(A)< identifying all claims and issues, >(B) identifying< the patents and/or printed publications relied on, and >(C) providing< a brief statement of the rationale supporting each new question.

In the examiner's decision, the examiner must identify at least one substantial new question of patentability and explain how the prior art patents and/or printed publications raise such a question. The examiner should indicate, insofar as possible, his or her initial position on all the issues identified in the request or by the requester (without rejecting claims) so that comment thereon may be received in the patent owner's statement and in the requester's reply. The prior art relied on should be listed on a form PTO-892 if it is not already listed on a form PTO-1449>, PTO/SB/08A or 08B, or PTO/SB/42 (or on a form having a format equivalent to one of these forms)< by the requester. A copy of a reference should be supplied only where it has not been previously supplied to the patent owner and requester.

As to each substantial new question of patentability identified in the decision, the decision should point out:

- (A) The prior art patents and printed publications which add some new teaching as to at least one claim;
- (B) What that new teaching is;
- (C) The claims that the new teaching is directed to;
- (D) That the new teaching was not previously considered nor addressed in the prior examination of the patent or a final holding of invalidity by the Federal Courts;
- (E) That the new teaching is such that a reasonable examiner would consider the new teaching to be important in deciding to allow the claim being considered; and

(F) Where the question is raised, or where it is not clear that a patent or printed publication pre-dates the patent claims, a discussion should be provided as to why the patent or printed publication is deemed to be available against the patent claims.

See MPEP § 2247.01 for an example of a decision granting a request for reexamination.

In a simple case, the examiner may adopt the reasons provided by the requester in the discussion of the substantial new question of patentability.

>The example in MPEP § 2247.01 is drafted for the case where the "request indicates that Requester considers that Claims 1-3 are unpatentable over Smith taken with Jones." There may, however, be a request **that does not indicate the claims to be unpatentable over the art**, but rather that a substantial new question of patentability is raised by the art. This may occur, for example, in a patent owner request filed to address prior art that raises a substantial new question of patentability but the claims are still patentable over the art. **In such an instance**, the decision on the request should not state that the "request indicates that Requester considers that Claims 1-3 are unpatentable over Smith taken with Jones." Rather, it should state that the "request indicates that Requester considers that a substantial new question of patentability is raised as to Claims 1-3 based on Smith taken with Jones."<

In the decision on the request, the examiner will not decide, and no statement should be made as to, whether the claims are rejected over the patents and printed publications. The examiner does not decide on the question of patentability of the claims in the decision on the request. The examiner only decides whether there is a substantial new question of patentability to grant the request to order reexamination.

If arguments are raised by a requester (third party or patent owner) as to grounds not based on the patents or printed publications, such as those based on public use or sale, or abandonment under 35 U.S.C. 102(c), the examiner should note that such grounds are improper for reexamination and are not considered or commented upon. See 37 CFR 1.552(c).

The decision granting the request is made on a decision form and must set forth the time periods for the patent owner and requester to file their statement and any reply thereto.

Form paragraph 22.01 should be used at the end of each decision letter.

¶ 22.01 *New Question of Patentability*

A substantial new question of patentability affecting claim [1] of United States Patent Number [2] is raised by the request for *ex parte* reexamination.

Extensions of time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) will not be permitted in these proceedings because the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136 apply only to “an applicant” and not to parties in a reexamination proceeding. Additionally, 35 U.S.C. 305 requires that *ex parte* reexamination proceedings “will be conducted with special dispatch” (37 CFR 1.550(a)). Extensions of time in *ex parte* reexamination proceedings are provided for in 37 CFR 1.550(c).

Upon determination that a substantial new question of patentability is present, either pursuant to a request under 35 U.S.C. 302 and 37 CFR 1.515, or a *sua sponte* determination under 35 U.S.C. 303(a), second sentence, and 37 CFR 1.520, the Director of the USPTO issues an order to reexamine. \*\*35 U.S.C. 304 (first sentence) states that:<

[T]he determination [that a substantial new question of patentability is raised] will include an order for reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. \*\*

## I. PETITION TO VACATE THE ORDER GRANTING REEXAMINATION

A substantive determination by the Director of the USPTO to institute reexamination pursuant to a finding that the prior art patents or printed publications raise a substantial new question of patentability is not subject to review by the courts until a final agency decision in the reexamination proceeding has issued. See *Joy Mfg. Co. v. Nat'l Mine Serv. Co., Inc.*, 810 F.2d 1127, 1 USPQ2d 1627 (Fed. Cir. 1987); *Heinl v. Godici*, 143 >F.< Supp.2d 593 (E.D.Va. 2001). Note further the decision of *Patlex Corp. v. Quigg*, >680 F. Supp. 33, 35,< 6 USPQ2d 1296, 1298 (D.D.C. 1988) (the legislative scheme leaves the Director's 35 U.S.C. 303 determination entirely to his or her discretion and not subject to judicial review until a final agency decision on the reexamination proceeding has issued). Accordingly, neither the patent owner nor the requester has a right to petition, or request reconsideration of, a finding that prior art patents or printed publications raise a substantial new question after a request for reexamination is granted. There is no right to petition such a finding after a request for reexamination is granted even if the finding of a substantial new question is based on reasons other than those

urged by the requester (or based on less than all the grounds urged by the requester). Where the examiner determines that a date of a reference is early enough such that the reference constitutes prior art, that determination is not petitionable (with respect to vacating the examiner's finding of a substantial new question). Where the examiner determines that a reference is a printed publication (i.e., that the criteria for publication has been satisfied), that determination is also not petitionable. These matters cannot be questioned with respect to vacating the order granting reexamination until a final agency decision on the reexamination proceeding has issued. Rather, these matters can be argued by the patent owner and appealed during the examination phase of the reexamination proceeding.

A petition under 37 CFR 1.181 may, however, be filed to vacate an *ultra vires* reexamination order, such as where the order for reexamination is not based on prior art patents and printed publications. In cases where no discretion to grant a request for reexamination exists, a petition to vacate the decision to grant, or a request for reconsideration, will be entertained. “Appropriate circumstances” under 37 CFR 1.181(a)(3) exist to vacate the order granting reexamination where, for example:

(A) the reexamination order is not based on prior art patents or printed publications;

(B) all claims of the patent were held to be invalid by a final decision of a Federal Court after all appeals;

(C) reexamination was ordered for the wrong patent;

(D) reexamination was ordered based on a duplicate copy of the request; or

(E) the reexamination order is based wholly on the same question of patentability raised by the prior art previously considered in an earlier concluded examination of the patent by the Office (e.g., the application which matured into the patent, a prior reexamination, an interference proceeding).

As to (E) above, the decision of *In re Recreative Technologies Corp.*, 83 F.3d 1394, 38 USPQ2d 1776 (Fed. Cir. 1996) is to be noted. See the discussion in MPEP § 2242 subsection II.A. as to the criteria for vacating a reexamination order in view of the decisions.

When a petition under 37 CFR 1.181 is filed to vacate an reexamination order, the third party



requester (where one is present in the reexamination proceeding) may file a single submission in opposition to the petition. Because reexamination proceedings are conducted with special dispatch, 35 U.S.C. 305, any such opposition by the third party requester must be filed within two weeks of the date upon which a copy of the original 37 CFR 1.181 petition was served on the third party requester to ensure consideration. It is advisable that, upon receipt and review of the served copy of such a 37 CFR 1.181 petition which the third party requester intends to oppose, the requester should immediately place a courtesy telephone call to >both the Central Reexamination Unit of the Office of Patent Legal Administration and< the Special Program Examiner in the Technology Center in which the reexamination proceeding is pending to notify the Office that an opposition to the 37 CFR 1.181 petition will be filed. Whenever possible, filing of the opposition should be submitted by facsimile transmission.

The filing of a 37 CFR 1.181 petition to vacate an *ultra vires* reexamination order is limited to a single submission, even if an opposition thereto is filed by a third party requester.

## II. PRIOR ART SUBMITTED AFTER THE ORDER

Any prior art citations under 37 CFR 1.501 submitted after the date of the decision on the order should be retained in a separate file by the Technology Center (usually the TC Special Program Examiner) and stored until the reexamination proceeding is >concluded<, at which time the prior art citation is then entered of record on the patent file. See MPEP § 2206.

### 2247 Decision on Request for Reexamination, Request Denied [R-3]

The request for reexamination will be denied if a substantial new question of patentability is not found based on patents or printed publications.

If the examiner concludes that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the examiner should prepare a decision denying the reexamination request. Form paragraph 22.02 should be used as the introductory paragraph in a decision denying reexamination.

#### ¶ 22.02 No New Question of Patentability

No substantial new question of patentability is raised by the request for reexamination and prior art cited therein for the reasons set forth below.

The decision >denying the request< will then indicate, for each patent and printed publication cited in the request, why the citation is:

(A) Cumulative to the teachings of the art cited in the earlier concluded examination of the patent;

(B) Not available against the claims (e.g., the reference is not available as prior art because of its date or the reference is not a publication);

(C) Not important to a reasonable examiner in deciding whether any claim of the patent for which reexamination is requested is patentable, even though the citation is not cumulative and the citation is available against the claim; or

(D) One which was cited in the record of the patent and is barred by the guidelines set forth in MPEP § 2242 subsection II. A.

The examiner should also, in the decision respond to the substance of each argument raised by the requester which is based on patents or printed publications. If arguments are presented as to grounds not based on prior art patents or printed publications, such as those based on public use or on sale under 35 U.S.C. 102(b), or abandonment under 35 U.S.C. 102(c), the examiner should note that such grounds are improper for reexamination and are not considered or commented upon. See 37 CFR 1.552(c).

See MPEP § 2247.01 for an example of a decision denying a request for reexamination. >The example in MPEP § 2247.01 is drafted for the case where the “request indicates that Requester considers that Claims 1-2 are unpatentable over Smith taken with Jones.” There may, however, be a request that does not indicate the claims to be unpatentable over the art, but rather that a substantial new question of patentability is raised by the art. This may occur, for example, in a patent owner request filed to address prior art that raises a substantial new question of patentability but the claims are still patentable over the art. In such an instance, the decision on the request should not state that the “request indicates that Requester considers that Claims 1-2 are unpatentable over Smith taken with Jones.” Rather, it should state that the “request indicates that Requester considers





# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE



STOP  
FAKES  
.GOV/  
SMALLBUSINESS

Educate

Register

Protect

















*Performance and Accountability Report  
for Fiscal Year 2005*



## FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

(Dollars In Thousands)	% Change 2005 over 2004	September 30, 2005	September 30, 2004
Fund Balance with Treasury	9.3%	\$ 1,240,798	\$ 1,135,268
Property, Plant, and Equipment, Net	8.1%	148,401	137,303
Other Assets	(19.4)%	19,950	24,741
Total Assets	8.6%	<u>\$ 1,409,149</u>	<u>\$ 1,297,312</u>
Deferred Revenue	21.9%	\$ 706,734	\$ 579,596
Accounts Payable	31.7%	101,770	77,287
Accrued Payroll, Benefits, and Leave	8.8%	90,727	83,408
Other Liabilities	4.7%	92,088	87,970
Total Liabilities	19.7%	<u>\$ 991,319</u>	<u>\$ 828,261</u>
Net Position	(10.9)%	<u>417,830</u>	<u>469,051</u>
Total Liabilities & Net Position Program	8.6%	<u>\$ 1,409,149</u>	<u>\$ 1,297,312</u>
Total Program Cost	10.5%	\$ 1,424,028	\$ 1,289,181
Total Earned Revenue	10.8%	<u>(1,372,807)</u>	<u>(1,239,023)</u>
Net Cost of Operations	2.1%	<u>\$ 51,221</u>	<u>\$ 50,158</u>
Budgetary Resources Available for Spending	22.3%	\$ 1,511,155	\$ 1,235,201
Total Collections, Net	35.6%	<u>\$ 102,126</u>	<u>\$ 75,314</u>
Federal Personnel	8.0%	7,363	6,816
Disbursements by Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT)	—	99%	99%
On-Time Payments to Vendors	1.0%	99%	

## PERFORMANCE HIGHLIGHTS

Performance Measures	Target	Actual	Met/Not Met Score <sup>1</sup>
Patent Allowance Error Rate	4.0%	4.6%	
Patent In-Process Examination Compliance Rate	84.0%	86.2%	
Patent Average First Action Pendency (months)	21.3	21.1	
Patent Average Total Pendency (months)	31.0	29.1	
Patent Efficiency	\$4,122	\$3,877 <sup>2</sup>	
Trademark Final Action Deficiency Rate	5.0%	5.9%	
Trademark First Action Deficiency Rate	7.5%	4.7%	
Trademark First Action Pendency (months)	6.4	6.3	
Trademark Final Action Pendency (months)	20.3	19.6	
Trademark Efficiency	\$701	\$677 <sup>2</sup>	
Patent Applications Filed Electronically	4.0%	2.2% <sup>3</sup>	
Patent Applications Managed Electronically	90.0%	96.7%	
Trademark Applications Filed Electronically	70.0%	88.0%	
Trademark Applications Managed Electronically	99.0%	99.9%	
Intellectual Property Technical Activities/Countries Completed	80/75	59/142	 / 

<sup>1</sup> Following the guidance set forth by the Department of Commerce (DOC) we are using three ratings for met or not met. Green is for the actual meeting or exceeding the target. Yellow is for the target to be more than or equal to 75% met. Red is for the target which was not met by 75%

<sup>2,3</sup> Preliminary data. Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.

## T A B L E O F C O N T E N T S

<b>Message from the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO)</b>	3
<b>Message from the Acting Chief Financial Officer</b>	7
<b>Management's Discussion and Analysis</b>	11
Mission and Organization of the USPTO	13
Performance Goals and Results	15
Patent Performance	18
Trademark Performance	26
E-government and Intellectual Property Performance	35
Management Challenges	50
The President's Management Agenda	51
Management Controls and Compliance with Laws and Regulations	54
Financial Highlights	58
<b>Financial Section</b>	71
Principal Financial Statements and Related Notes	71
Required Supplementary Information	95
Independent Auditors' Report	99
Management and Performance Challenges Identified by the Inspector General	107
<b>Other Accompanying Information</b>	111
<b>Glossary of Acronyms and Abbreviation Lists</b>	149

WEB ADDRESS FOR THE USPTO PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT

<http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/annual/2005/index.html>



**MESSAGE FROM THE UNDER SECRETARY OF COMMERCE  
FOR INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND DIRECTOR OF THE  
UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

**FIGHTING PIRACY AND COUNTERFEITING  
BY PROTECTING INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS**

**T**he benefits of a strong intellectual property system have always been obvious to Americans. Article I, Section 8, Clause 8 of our Constitution grants Congress the power "to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries." That clause was adopted in our Constitution without a dissenting vote and without even any debate. History has repeatedly affirmed the wisdom of our nation's founders in establishing these principles.

The tremendous ingenuity of American inventors, coupled with an intellectual property system that encourages and rewards innovation, has propelled our nation from a small agrarian society to the world's preeminent technological and economic superpower. And all of our patented technology finds its way to the public domain within 20 years — freely available to any and all. The success of a strong system of intellectual property rights is not limited to the United States — it has become the basis for economic development in nations throughout the world.

Unfortunately, a growing chorus of critics now questions whether this fundamental system of patents, trademarks, and copyrights enhances development in other nations. At the same time, there has been dramatic growth in the counterfeiting of products and pirating of digital content because of the advancement of digital technology, an increased focus by criminal organizations, and the lack of understanding by consumers that buying fake goods or illegally copying digital content is stealing and has victims.

During fiscal year (FY) 2005, the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) worked to educate many different audiences about the need to respect intellectual property. We led numerous initiatives to ensure that our country's system of intellectual property protection remains the best in the world and that it continues to protect public health and safety, encourage technological development, and provide for economic growth.

**USPTO EDUCATES OTHERS ABOUT INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY PROTECTION**

The USPTO communicated the importance of protecting and respecting intellectual property, both domestically and internationally. We worked with other U.S. government agencies, and we reached out to individuals, businesses, and foreign governments to strengthen and enforce intellectual property rights.

***Working with other U.S. government agencies***

As part of the Bush Administration's Strategy Targeting Organized Piracy! (STOP!) initiative, the USPTO worked with other U.S. government agencies on the shared goal of fighting piracy and counterfeiting. For example, the USPTO and the Department of Homeland Security, Customs and Border Protection (CBP) collaborated to inform trademark owners of the customs recording process to prevent the import of fakes. We also worked with our colleagues at the Department of Justice and the Office of the United States Trade Representative (USTR) to enhance the domestic and international intellectual property environment for American businesses.

During FY 2005, USPTO assisted the Department of Justice in developing the U.S. government position in *MGM v. Grokster*, a case involving the infringement of copyrighted works over peer-to-peer file sharing networks. In a unanimous decision, the Supreme Court held that companies may be liable for copyright infringement by others, if they induce such copyright infringement.





### ***Working with individuals and businesses***

As part of STOP!, the USPTO launched an intensive communications campaign to educate small businesses on protecting their intellectual property in the United States and abroad. In 2005, we offered small-business conferences in Salt Lake City, Phoenix, Austin, and Miami. Other USPTO conferences held in Baltimore and Detroit focused exclusively on challenges associated with doing business in China. All conferences had strong attendance and overwhelmingly positive feedback.

The USPTO staffed the STOP! hotline, 1-866-999-HALT, which lets callers receive information from our attorneys with regional expertise on intellectual property rights and enforcement. During FY 2005, the hotline received more than 750 phone calls from people across America with a range of intellectual property questions.

The STOP! gateway website, [www.stopfakes.gov](http://www.stopfakes.gov), features specialized information, including USPTO-designed "intellectual property toolkits" to help businesses protect their rights in other countries, such as China, Korea, and Mexico. The USPTO also added [www.stopfakes.gov/smallbusiness](http://www.stopfakes.gov/smallbusiness) to meet the specific needs of smaller companies seeking to protect intellectual property rights.

### ***Working with other governments***

To strengthen global intellectual property protection, the USPTO represented the U.S. government in discussions and negotiations at the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) throughout the year.

In January, we unveiled a comprehensive plan of technical assistance and cooperative exchanges with our counterparts in the Chinese government to improve China's intellectual property rights administration and enforcement. Through the Joint Commission on Commerce and Trade (JCCT) Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Working Group, and together with the Office of the USTR, we helped negotiate a comprehensive set of commitments from the Chinese government to reduce counterfeiting and piracy in China.

We established the USPTO Global Intellectual Property Academy to consolidate and greatly expand current intellectual property training programs for foreign government officials. As part of our ongoing technical assistance, the USPTO conducted programs on IPR protection and enforcement issues for officials and private sector representatives from Southeast Asia, the Middle East, North Africa, Latin America, Russia, Turkey, and many other countries.

We launched an initiative to place USPTO IPR experts in Brazil, China, India, Russia, and other developing regions, working closely with the United States and Foreign Commercial Service and the Department of State. These experts will press for improved IPR protection for American businesses and coordinate training and technical assistance efforts to stop piracy and counterfeiting.

## **USPTO CONTINUALLY IMPROVES INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY PROTECTION IN OUR OFFICE**

We are proud of our 200-year history of administering the system that has helped make our nation a technological and economic giant. Today, through issuing patents, the USPTO carries on the tradition of encouraging technological advancement. Through registering trademarks, we help businesses protect their investments and safeguard consumers against deception in the marketplace. To continue this legacy in 2005, we worked to maintain and improve the world's best patent and trademark systems.

## **IMPROVING THE WORLD'S BEST PATENT OFFICE**

In 2005, the number of patent applications we received continued to grow at a rapid pace. Our office now receives many patent applications on CD-ROM, containing millions of pages of data. In short, the volume and complexity of patent applications continues to outpace current capacity to examine them. The result is a pending — and growing — application backlog of historic proportions. Patent pendency — the amount of time a patent application is waiting before a patent is issued — now averages more than two years. In more complex art areas, such as data-processing technologies, average pendency stands at more than three years.

We are still faster and less expensive than any other major patent office in the world, but without the fundamental changes we have made in the way USPTO operates, average patent pendency would have sky rocketed. And we continue to take steps to reduce pendency.

We had made a set of commitments in this regard two years ago, and we have delivered on them – across the board. We promised electronic processing for patents and trademark applications within two years, and we delivered. We promised to make patent reexaminations faster, and we delivered. We said our production would improve, and it has. We said we would hire patent examiners in record proportions. We have, and we will continue to do so.

***Hiring more patent examiners, providing better training, and implementing a work-from-home program***

The USPTO hired a record 978 patent examiners, exceeding our FY 2005 hiring goal by approximately 100. We also plan to hire approximately 1,000 new examiners over the next year, representing a monumental increase in professional staff.

With such dramatic hiring, we needed to find new ways to train and provide space for this new group of professionals. We are developing an academy approach to training our new patent examiners, in which we teach them in a classroom for up to one year, rather than our traditional one-on-one training. This new initiative is expected to help the USPTO better train and retain the large number of new examiners we are hiring, while freeing up more of our experienced supervisory patent examiners to mentor and supervise.

We are also piloting a Patents' Hoteling Program, which includes providing patent examiners with access to the systems they need to do their jobs from home. This will give us space to add examiners more quickly and cost-effectively. Up to 200 patent managers will be deployed as teleworkers by December 2005. Additionally, up to 500 more patent examiners, managers, and technical support staff will gain this capability in FY 2006.

***Offering more efficient options to applicants***

The USPTO has implemented initiatives to improve the timeliness, efficiency, and quality of patent reexaminations. During FY 2005, we developed a new pre-appeal brief conference pilot program that offers applicants the ability to request a panel of examiners to formally review their application rejections before they file an appeal brief. We expect this change to save patent applicants at least \$30 million annually in litigation costs.

We have ensured that all *ex parte* patent reexaminations pending for more than two years were processed to final determination, and we have put in place a system that will process *ex parte* reexaminations more efficiently going forward. This effort includes placing 20 experienced primary examiners to concentrate solely on reexaminations.

We are developing a web-based patent application filing system that allows automated processing of images, rather than manually uploading image data. The new system will enhance the quality of patent examination by providing a searchable database not previously available. We expect this system to be initially deployed by the winter of 2005.

---

**IMPROVING THE WORLD'S BEST TRADEMARK OFFICE**

---

Similarly, we are always working to improve our trademark operations as well. We want to get to new cases faster with the best possible decisions, so our customers can make sound business judgments as soon as possible.

***Enhancing e-filing***

More than 88 percent of trademark applications were filed electronically in FY 2005. We continued to enhance our electronic filing by expanding the number and type of transactions that can be completed on-line and by offering reduced fees to encourage electronic communications.

***Offering greater transparency***

We achieved a major milestone in maximizing electronic tools to make the trademark registration process fully transparent to the public. Anyone with Internet access can now review documents in our official trademark application file.

### ***Continuing successful hoteling program***

The Trademark operation's award-winning work-at-home hoteling program for examining attorneys was expanded to include 69 percent of eligible examiners by the end of FY 2005. This program proved successful in retaining experienced examiners and helping address increases in trademark filing without incurring additional real estate costs.

## **CONCLUSION**

This Performance and Accountability Report summarizes the USPTO's achievements and challenges for FY 2005. I am pleased to certify that our agency's systems of management control, taken as a whole, comply with Section 2 of the Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act of 1982 (FMFIA). Our agency is also in substantial compliance with applicable federal accounting standards and the U.S. Standard General Ledger at the transaction level and with federal financial system requirements. Accordingly, our agency fully complies with Section 4 of the FMFIA, with no material non-conformances. In addition, we are confident that the USPTO's financial and performance data is complete, reliable, accurate, and consistent, as we improve our ability to measure progress toward performance objectives.

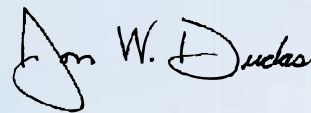
For the 13th consecutive year, we have received an unqualified audit opinion on our annual financial statements. In addition, the independent auditors' report did not identify any material weaknesses, reportable conditions, or instances of noncompliance.

The USPTO has received the Inspector General's statement summarizing the major management and performance challenges that are facing our agency. We recognize the importance of ensuring a stable human resources operation. We have created a comprehensive Human Capital Improvement Plan that defines and addresses these challenges. This plan will join human resources practices with management and business results.

Advancements in agency operations enabled the USPTO to achieve a majority (75 percent) of our key performance measures in FY 2005 despite higher than planned application filings, the fact that we hired and assimilated approximately 1,000 new examiners in Patents and Trademarks, our continued transition to an electronic processing environment, and our relocation to the Alexandria campus. Of the four measures we did not meet, we made significant progress in the latter part of the year on two quality metrics, and we implemented a program to encourage electronic filing of patent applications. Further, we exceeded our technical assistance activities target, when training and enforcement activities are considered.

During FY 2005, the USPTO lived up to our duty to strengthen intellectual property protection in the United States and around the world. By definition, that has meant fighting piracy and counterfeiting efforts on every front and have educated numerous constituents on the importance of intellectual property to economic and technological progress.

Our vision also means continually improving our own operations and preparing to become even more agile in the future. With the leadership of President George W. Bush and Secretary of Commerce Carlos Gutierrez, I am confident that we will continue to meet the challenges of a 21st century economy.



Jon W. Dudas  
Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and  
Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

November 2, 2005



## MESSAGE FROM THE ACTING CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER

I am pleased to present the USPTO's FY 2005 *Performance and Accountability Report*. For a third consecutive year, the USPTO was awarded the Association of Government Accountants' Certificate of Excellence in Accountability Reporting for its FY 2004 *Performance and Accountability Report*. We also received an unqualified opinion from our independent auditors on the USPTO's FY 2005 financial statements for a 13th consecutive year. This "clean" opinion was issued together with no reported material weaknesses or reportable conditions in the design and operation of our system of internal control.

USPTO's fee modernization bill was enacted in FY 2005. This major change provided resources to enhance our capabilities to meet the goals of our *21st Century Strategic Plan* of high quality and timely issuance of patents and registration of trademarks, increased electronic government, and work sharing initiatives worldwide. The additional funds available to the USPTO allowed us to increase the number of patent examiners, which will greatly assist in reducing pendency levels caused by the growing average complexity of applications and increasing workloads.

These advancements serve to improve us as an agency and allow us to protect intellectual property in the United States and abroad. We will continue supporting the USPTO's role in structuring new multilateral and bilateral agreements with other intellectual property offices and promoting global harmonization of law in order to strengthen the rights of our intellectual property holders and provide international protection for their inventions.

The USPTO separated the offices of the Chief Financial Officer and the Chief Administrative Officer this year. This organizational change will allow the organization to focus on the continued improvement of USPTO financial and performance information, which will result in better decision-making, improve utilization of resources, and support the President's Management Agenda for competitive sourcing, improved financial performance, budget and performance integration, and expanded electronic government.

The *21st Century Strategic Plan* identified new approaches for performing work using competitive sourcing. During the current year, we were able to implement some of these approaches. We successfully completed two competitions for commercial activities, including classification of patent pre-grant publication documents and mail fulfillment operations. In addition, we have competitively sourced search activities associated with the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) process. This activity serves as a pilot for competitively sourcing the search of national cases in accordance with the requirements of the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2005 (Public Law 108-447) and our efforts to utilize our resources in the most productive manner will continue in the future.

We continued to strengthen our internal review program and performed more internal control reviews than any single year to date. Further, we continued to emphasize the importance of internal control certifications required by our management to provide the annual assurance, which is required under the FMFIA. Our periodic evaluation process, together with our strong management oversight, and continued commitment to improvements in internal control allow me to provide reasonable assurance that the USPTO's systems of internal accounting and administrative control fully comply with the requirements of the FMFIA for FY 2005. This existing internal control review program positioned the USPTO for full compliance with the new requirements for internal controls over financial reporting outlined in the Office of Management and Budget's (OMB) revised Circular A-123, *Management's Responsibility for Internal Control*.





Having attained a reliable process for preparing financial statements, we continue to identify areas of financial management for further improvement. During FY 2005, we revised our key monthly management report to include enhanced planned performance and spending compared against actual performance and spending results, with forecasts for the remainder of the year. This report allows management to continually monitor financial and program performance against plans to take timely corrective action.

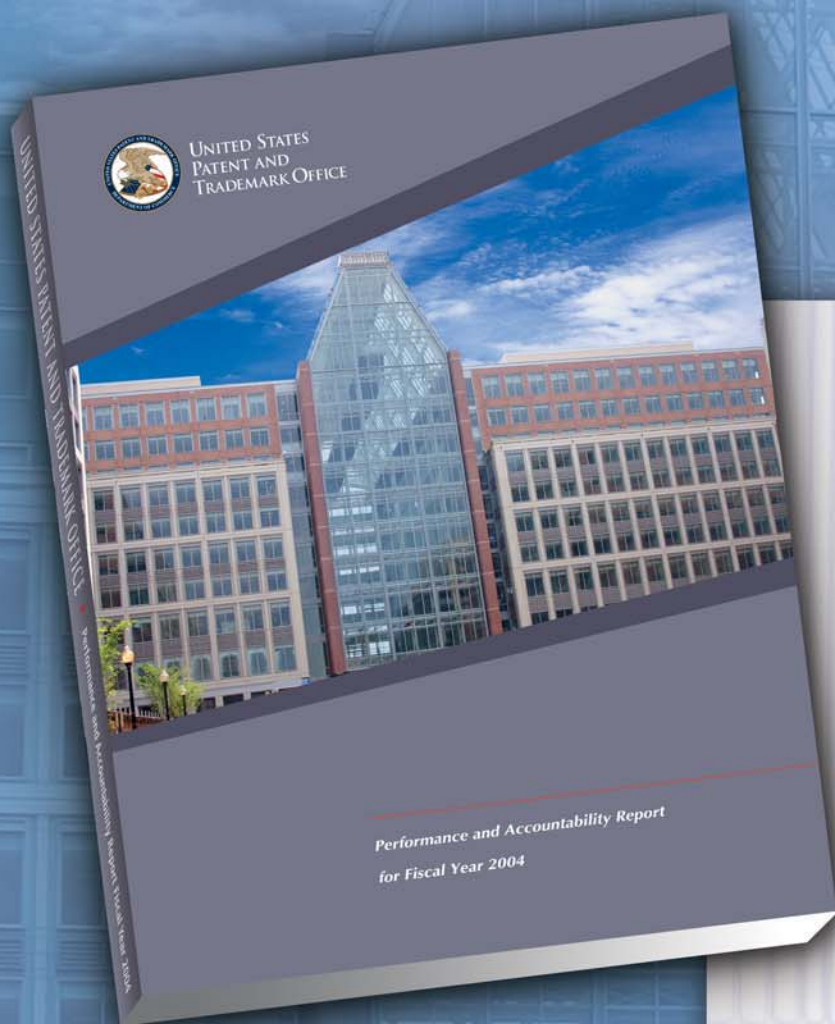
The USPTO continues to realize the benefits of the electronic government initiatives that were put in place as a part of our *21st Century Strategic Plan*. These initiatives were taken to provide services that are tailored to customer needs, as well as to improve the efficiency of our processing systems. During the current year, we saw an increased use of the internet for patent and trademark applications and searches on-line. Our electronic fee receipts for patent and trademark products and services increased by 19 percent during FY 2005 as compared to the prior fiscal year.

In the upcoming year, we will continue to focus our efforts on the initiatives related to the President's Management Agenda, improve our financial management systems, and enhance our internal control program. Our goals remain to provide timely, reliable, and useful financial management information to USPTO management and to serve our customers as best as we can.



Howard N. Goldberg  
Acting Chief Financial Officer  
November 2, 2005

# 2004 CERTIFICATE OF EXCELLENCE



## CERTIFICATE OF EXCELLENCE IN ACCOUNTABILITY REPORTING®

Presented to the

*United States Patent  
and Trademark Office*

In recognition of your outstanding efforts  
in preparing the USPTO's  
Performance and Accountability  
Report for the fiscal  
year ended **September 30, 2004.**

A Certificate of Excellence in Accountability Reporting is presented  
by the Association of Government Accountants to federal government  
agencies whose annual Performance and Accountability Reports  
achieve the highest standards in presenting  
their programs and financial affairs.



*John H. Hummel*  
John H. Hummel, CGFM  
Chair, Certificate of Excellence  
in Accountability Reporting Board

*Julian Berthrong*  
Julian Berthrong, CGFM  
2003-2004 National President



# Management's Discussion and Analysis







## MISSION AND ORGANIZATION OF THE USPTO

### MISSION STATEMENT

The USPTO's mission is to ensure that the Intellectual Property system contributes to a strong global economy, encourages investment in innovation, and fosters entrepreneurial spirit. Intellectual property is an invention or creation embodied in the form of a patent, trademark, trade secret, or copyright.

For over 200 years, the basic role of the USPTO has remained the same: to promote the progress of science and the useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries (Article 1, Section 8 of the United States Constitution). American industry has flourished under this system of protection as new products have been invented, new uses for inventions have been discovered, and employment opportunities have been created for millions of Americans. Customers have been protected against confusion and deception in the marketplace, and businesses have been given the enhanced protection of trademark rights and notices of the trademark rights claimed by others. Patents and trademarks have long protected American creativity and ingenuity. The first patent was issued in 1790 for a method of making potash fertilizer and the oldest active trademark was originally registered in 1884 for SAMSON, a design for "cords, lines, and ropes."

The strength and vitality of our economy depends directly on effective mechanisms that protect new ideas and investments in innovation and creativity. The continued demand for patents and trademarks underscores the ingenuity of American inventors and entrepreneurs. The USPTO is at the cutting edge of our nation's technological progress and achievement.

The primary services provided by the USPTO are examining patent and trademark applications and disseminating patent and trademark information. Through issuing patents, we encourage technological advancement by providing incentives to invent, invest in, and disclose new technology. Through registering trademarks, we assist businesses in protecting their investments, promoting quality goods and services, and safeguarding consumers against confusion and deception in the marketplace. By disseminating both patent and trademark information, we promote a global understanding of intellectual property protection and facilitate the development and sharing of new technologies worldwide.



*Interior of the Madison Building's glass atrium.*

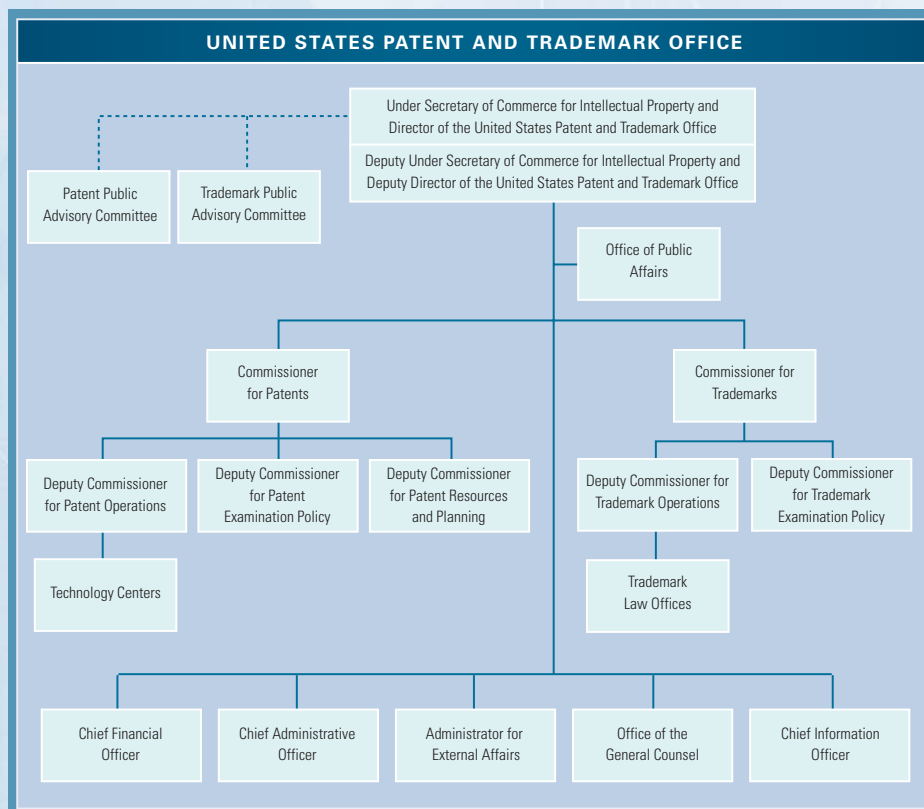
## LOCATION, ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE, AND WORKFORCE

The USPTO is an agency of the United States within Department of Commerce. In FY 2005, USPTO successfully completed its move to its new facility in Alexandria, Virginia. In addition, USPTO has two storage facilities in Alexandria and Springfield, Virginia, and leased storage space in Boyers, Pennsylvania. The USPTO workforce is comprised of 7,363 federal employees, including 4,258 patent examiners and 357 trademark examining attorneys, and 3,687 contract employees.



*View of the USPTO headquarters from Dulany Gardens.*

The USPTO has evolved into a unique government agency. Since 1991—under the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA) of 1990—the USPTO has operated in much the same way as a private business, providing valued products and services to its customers in exchange for fees that are used to fund its operations. The USPTO is lead by the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the USPTO who consults with the Patent Public Advisory Committee and Trademark Public Advisory Committee. The USPTO has two major business lines – Patents and Trademarks – as shown in the following organization chart:





## PERFORMANCE GOALS AND RESULTS

### USPTO STRATEGIC PLAN

The Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA) requires that agencies plan and measure the performance of their programs. In carrying out GPRA, the USPTO prepares a Performance Report and a *Strategic Plan*, which can be found on our website: <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/strat21/index.htm>. By design, the performance plan is linked to the budget submissions and reflects the priorities of the Under Secretary and the goals contained in the *21st Century Strategic Plan*. The budget can be found at: <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/ac/comp/budg/index.html>.

The USPTO began FY 2005 guided by the five year *21st Century Strategic Plan*, most recently updated in February 2003 and covering the period through FY 2008. Technology has been increasingly complex and customer demands for high quality products and services have escalated. At the same time, the number of pending patent applications in the world's examination pipeline continues to increase significantly. Congress has voiced concerns about the agency's ability to effectively fulfill our mission in the future if we continue to operate in a traditional business model. The *21st Century Strategic Plan* addresses these challenges and concerns. It is a far-reaching and aggressive plan designed to transform the USPTO into an organization that is truly responsive to the global economy. The *Plan* facilitates tailoring products and services to customer needs and focusing our expertise on examination. Three long-term, cross-cutting strategic themes comprise the *Plan's* core:

- **Agility:** Address the 21st century economy by becoming a more agile organization—We will create a flexible organization and work processes that can handle the increasing expectations of our markets, the growing complexity and volume of our work, and the globalization that characterizes the 21st century economy. We will work, both bilaterally and multilaterally, with our partners to create a stronger, better-coordinated, and more streamlined framework for protecting intellectual property around the world. We will transform the USPTO workplace by radically reducing labor-intensive paper processing.
- **Capability:** Enhance quality through workforce and process improvements—We will make patent and trademark quality our highest priority by emphasizing quality in every component of this *Strategic Plan*. Through the timely issuance of high-quality patents and trademark registrations, we will respond to market forces by promoting advances in technology, expanding business opportunities and creating jobs.
- **Productivity:** Accelerate processing times through focused examination—We will control patent and trademark pendency, reduce time to first office action, and recover our investments in people, processes, and technology.

The USPTO has developed supporting performance goals and measures to implement our strategic themes. The three supporting performance goals tracked through 16 measures include:

- GOAL 1:** Improve the quality of patent products and services and optimize patent processing time.
- GOAL 2:** Improve the quality of trademark products and services and optimize trademark processing time.
- GOAL 3:** Create a more flexible organization through transitioning patent and trademark operations to an e-government environment and participate in intellectual property development worldwide.



The Agility theme is linked to the third performance goal and incorporates ongoing initiatives in e-government. As a first priority, the USPTO has made electronic end-to-end processing of both patents and trademarks the centerpiece of its business model by deploying critical automated information systems. In addition, the USPTO is currently working on ways to improve delivery schedules, reliability, performance, security, and monitoring of the cost of all our automated information systems. Further, the USPTO is enhancing existing and establishing new alliances with our friends in other national and international intellectual property organizations to strengthen intellectual property rights around the world.

The Capability theme crosses all performance goals, emphasizing the quality and process improvement elements within the USPTO and permeating our activities and operations. Quality will be assured throughout the process by hiring the people who make the best patent and trademark examiners, certifying their knowledge and competencies throughout their careers at the USPTO, and focusing on quality throughout the examination of patent and trademark applications.

The Productivity theme is linked to performance goals 1 and 2 and addresses the planned longer-term reduction in patent and trademark pendency, as measured by the average first action pendency and the average total pendency.

In FY 2005, the USPTO continued implementing goals and objectives put forth in the *Plan*, to the extent they were consistent with congressional intent and supported by our stakeholders and applicants.

## PERFORMANCE DATA VERIFICATION AND VALIDATION

In accordance with GPRA requirements, the USPTO is committed to making certain that performance information reported is complete, accurate, and consistent. To ensure the highest quality data, the USPTO has developed a strategy to validate and verify the quality, reliability, and credibility of USPTO performance results and has undertaken the following:

**Accountability** – Responsibility for providing performance data lies with the management of USPTO programs. The USPTO holds program managers accountable for ensuring procedures are in place regarding the accuracy of their data and that the performance measurement source is complete and reliable.

**Quality Control** – Automated systems and databases that collect, track, and store the performance indicators are monitored and maintained by the management of USPTO programs, with systems support provided by the Chief Information Officer's organization. Each system, such as the Patent Application Location and Monitoring (PALM) or Trademark Reporting and Monitoring (TRAM), incorporates internal program edits to control the accuracy of supporting data. The edits typically evaluate data for reasonableness, consistency, and accuracy. Cross-checks against other internal automated systems also provide assurances of data reasonableness and consistency. In addition to internal monitoring of each system, experts outside of the business units routinely monitor the data collection methodology. The Chief Financial Officer's organization is responsible for monitoring the agency's performance, providing direction and support on data collection methodology and analysis, ensuring that data quality checks are in place, and reporting performance management data.

**Financial Statement Audit** – During the FY 2005 financial statement audit, various tests and reviews of the primary accounting system and internal controls were conducted, as required by the Chief Financial Officers' Act. In their FY 2005 report, the auditors reported no material weaknesses in internal controls or material compliance violations. The auditors issued an unqualified opinion on the USPTO's FY 2005 financial statements. Additionally, as required by OMB Bulletin Number 01-02, the auditors reported that they had "obtained an understanding of the design of significant internal controls relating to the existence and completeness assertions" with respect to the performance measures reported in the Management Discussion and Analysis section.

**Data Accuracy** – The USPTO conducts verification and validation of performance measures periodically to ensure quality, reliability, and credibility. At the beginning of each fiscal year, and at various points throughout the reporting or measurement period, sampling techniques and sample counts are reviewed and adjusted to ensure data are statistically reliable for making inferences about the population as a whole. Data analyses are also conducted to assist the business units in interpreting the program data, such as the identification of statistically significant trends and underlying factors that may be impacting a specific performance indicator. For examination quality measures, the review programs themselves are assessed in terms of reviewer variability, data entry errors, and various potential biases.



*Members of the Annual Performance Review Team. The team received the "Certificate of Excellence in Accountability Reporting Award," from the Association of Government Accountants for the USPTO FY 2004 Performance and Accountability Report.*

## PERFORMANCE AUDITS AND EVALUATIONS

The Office of the Inspector General (OIG) also contributes to the USPTO's efforts to assure audit and evaluation coordination and coverage of USPTO goals.

One evaluation was completed in FY 2005. In this case, the OIG evaluated whether required information technology (IT) security clauses have been incorporated into IT service contracts and whether the clause requirements have been properly implemented. (*Information Security in Contracts Needs Better Enforcement and Oversight, OSE-17455/September 2005*). While most of the contracts contained the required clauses, the OIG found that the clauses are not being properly implemented and in some cases requirements are not being enforced, placing USPTO IT systems at risk.

The performance of the USPTO's two major program activities was assessed in FY 2003 using the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART). The Patent organization received a rating of "adequate" with a score of 68, and the Trademark organization received a rating of "moderately effective" with a score of 73. In response to PART recommendations, the USPTO has implemented efficiency measures as unit cost measures for the Patent and Trademark organizations.

The Government Accounting Office (GAO) issued two reports this year. The USPTO agreed with the recommendations in the report entitled *Intellectual Property: USPTO Has Made Progress in Hiring Examiners, but Challenges to Retention Remain* and has taken steps to develop a communication plan and labor management strategy to inform employees about progress on initiatives, successes and lessons learned. The USPTO also is developing a more formalized technical program for patent examiners to ensure their skills are fresh and ready to address state-of-the-art technology in patent applications.

In the second GAO report, *Intellectual Property: Key Processes for Managing Patent Automation*, the USPTO generally agreed with the GAO's recommendations and with the need for key improvements, such as developing architectural linkages to the planning process, implementing a capital planning and investment control guide, and completing planned organizational changes. The USPTO disagreed with the GAO finding related to project management and cost accounting. However, weaknesses associated with the "select phase" of the Capital Planning and Investment Control (CPIC) process are being refined to better support selection of USPTO investments. As noted in the response to the draft report, the USPTO already has started implementing many of the GAO recommended improvements.

In addition, the USPTO received the results of a study conducted by the National Academy of Public Administration entitled *U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: Transforming to Meet the Challenges of the 21st Century*. The USPTO currently is considering the findings and recommendations in the report.



## PATENT PERFORMANCE

The principal function of the Patent organization is the examination of an inventor's application for a patent. Patent examiners compare the claimed subject matter of an application to a large body of technological information to determine whether the claimed invention is new, useful, and non-obvious to someone knowledgeable in that subject matter. The examination process includes the preparation of: correspondence relating to the examination; answers on applications appealed to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences (BPAI); interference proceedings to determine priority of invention; and Search Reports and International Preliminary Examination Reports for PCT applications.



*Commissioner for Patents John Doll stands with Under Secretary Dudas after completing the swearing in ceremony.*

Additional offices within the Patent organization perform activities essential to the patent process. At the front end, the Office of Initial Patent Examination (OIPE) performs the initial administrative review of newly filed applications. In FY 2005, OIPE received 384,228 Utility, Plant, and Reissue (UPR) patent applications, 25,304 Design applications, as well as 46,926 PCT applications. This represents a 8.1 percent increase over FY 2004 UPR filings; an 7.9 percent increase over FY 2004 design applications; and a 3 percent increase over FY 2004 PCT applications. Additionally, 111,753 provisional applications were received.

At the back end of the process, the Office of Patent Publications performs post-examination processing of allowed applications, disseminates published applications, and issues patents to the public. In FY 2005, 152,090 UPR and 13,395 Design patents were granted and 291,221 pending applications were published, as provided for in the American Inventors Protection Act (AIPA) of 1999.

PCT Operations and the PCT Legal Administration Office administer the processing of international patent applications. The Search and Information Resources Administration (SIRA) supports examination processes by working closely with the Office of the Chief Information Officer in managing Patent IT activities. SIRA also implements and maintains classification schemes for the efficient retrieval of patent information and other documents residing in the search files. Additionally, SIRA acquires, maintains, and provides access to scientific and technical literature from multiple sources. The Office of Patent Training coordinates the development of curriculums and deployment of training throughout the Patent organization.

Quality is the first priority of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*. The Office of Patent Quality Assurance performs a quality review function, comprising reviews of a random sample of both in-process and allowed applications. To ensure that our primary patent examiners maintain the knowledge, skills, and abilities necessary to perform high quality examinations, the USPTO continued the re-certification program previously implemented, recertifying an additional one third of all primary examiners. A certification-testing program is provided to junior examiners prior to promotion to the level where they are given legal and negotiation authority. Both new first-line and experienced managers attended training to increase the effectiveness of work product reviews and improve coaching skills. The skills of the technical support staff are a vital component of supporting an



*(Left to right) Under Secretary Jon Dudas, Deputy Under Secretary Steve Pinkos, Secretary Gutierrez, and Vice President of Design for Daimler/Chrysler Trevor Creed join in celebrating the 500,000th U.S. design patent.*

efficient examination process, and the Patent organization is in the process of assessing the training needs of the technical support staff.

In support of quality examination, during FY 2005, the Patent organization developed a new pre-appeal brief conference pilot program that offers applicants a way to request a panel of managers and examiners to formally review application rejections before they file an appeal brief. The introduction of the pre-appeal brief conference complies with the President's Management Agenda mandate for a more citizen-centered, results-oriented government.

Additionally, during FY 2005, the Patent organization implemented initiatives to improve the quality and timeliness of patent reexaminations. A Central Reexam Unit (CRU) became operational in July of 2005. The CRU has consolidated and reorganized staff for handling new requests for reexamination. This effort included the placement of twenty experienced Primary Examiners in the new CRU to concentrate solely on reexaminations.

With the implementation of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, the USPTO will reduce patent pendency and substantially cut the size of our work backlog. The Office continues to strive to meet its performance goals by hiring sufficient numbers of new patent examiners, exploring work sharing with other patent Offices, administering competitive sourcing of PCT application searches, and implementing variable, incentive-driven fees. The Patent organization exceeded its FY 2005 hiring goal for patent examiners by hiring 978 new Utility, Plant, Reissue and Design examiners. USPTO plans to hire approximately 1,000 new patent examiners over the next year, representing a monumental increase in professional staff.

The USPTO successfully completed deployment of the patent Image File Wrapper (IFW) system in FY 2004, facilitating the electronic processing and management of Patent application files. Electronic capture of all pending paper applications was completed in FY 2005, enabling the electronic management of 96.7 percent of applications undergoing examination. For the first time in FY 2004, the Patent Application Image Retrieval (PAIR) system provided anyone with Internet access the ability to track the status of a public patent application as it moved from pre-grant publication to final disposition. In FY 2005, the Patent organization began development of a web-based Private PAIR to provide applicants with secure private access to their unpublished application documents via the Internet as soon as the application is internally processed. An integral component



of this service depended upon upgrades in FY 2005 to the IFW interface system (eDAN). Improvements to eDAN provided additional user functionality and enhanced data sharing with other systems such as PALM, Private PAIR, and Public PAIR. Additionally, a web-based version of the Electronic File System (EFS), is scheduled to be piloted in December 2005 and is expected to be in full production in FY 2006.

To attain our goal of increasing the number of applications filed electronically in FY 2006, the Patent organization held multiple forums in FY 2005 with customer groups to gather requirements for the development of a system that would increase the use of electronic filing by identifying and addressing applicants' needs. The resulting design for a web-based system with portable document format (PDF) attachments will be complemented by a marketing plan to ensure that our customers are familiar with the benefits of electronic filing.



*Employees from the Office of Human Resources greet and register interested candidates during a USPTO job fair.*

In FY 2004, the Patent organization achieved its e-government *21st Century Strategic Plan* objectives with all patent examiners, technical staff, and support staff working from an image-based system. Capitalizing on this capability, the organization launched a Patents' Hoteling Program pilot in FY 2005, providing participants the ability to work at home with full remote access to all systems needed to perform patent-examining functions.

In FY 2005, Patents began a new e-government initiative, Trilateral Document Access (TDA), to facilitate access by patent examiners to the content of patent applications stored in participating foreign intellectual property offices' application document image systems. The first phase of TDA, File Wrapper Access, was implemented with the European Patent Office (EPO) to allow examiners in both offices to

instantly view application document images for published applications using existing viewing tools. As a result, a patent examiner may conveniently compare the foreign application documents to the application under review and assist in the possibility of future sharing of prior searches for applications with common filings among patent offices.

Specific performance results related to the Patent organization goals and measures are as follows:

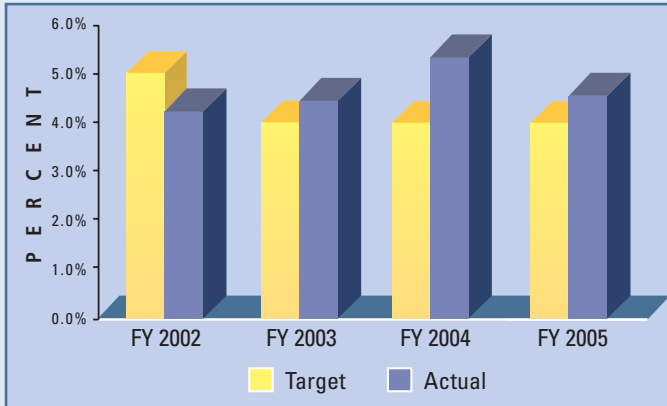
**PERFORMANCE GOAL: *Improve the quality of patent products and services and optimize patent processing time***

Under the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, the Patent organization will improve the quality of our products and services using in-depth reviews of work in progress and enhanced end-process reviews to provide feedback to examiners on areas for improvement, targeted training, and safeguards to ensure competencies. The following performance measures have been established to reflect the USPTO's success and progress in meeting the *Strategic Plan* goal.

## QUALITY OF PATENTS

### MEASURE: Patent Allowance Error Rate

#### PATENT ALLOWANCE ERROR RATE



#### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** Office of Patent Quality Review Report.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** Automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Manual reports and analysis.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

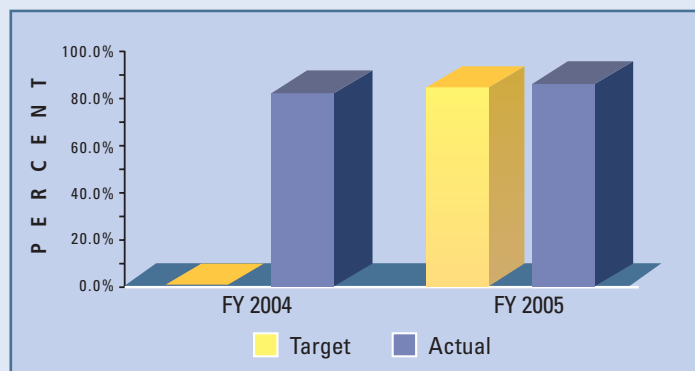
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	5.0%	4.0%	4.0%	4.0%
<b>Actual</b>	4.2%	4.4%	5.3%	4.6% not met

**Discussion:** Target not met. We failed to meet this year's target because a further enhanced second pair of eyes review was not instituted until the second half of the fiscal year.

We plan on meeting our goal next year because we have implemented quality initiatives to address the current shortcomings. These initiatives are already making an impact; the error rate for the second half of FY 2005 improved significantly. We anticipate further long-term quality improvements in FY 2006.

### MEASURE: Patent In-Process Examination Compliance Rate

#### PATENT IN-PROCESS EXAMINATION COMPLIANCE RATE



#### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** Office of Patent Quality Review Report.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** Automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Manual reports and analysis.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	—	Baseline	84%
<b>Actual</b>	—	—	82%	86.2% met

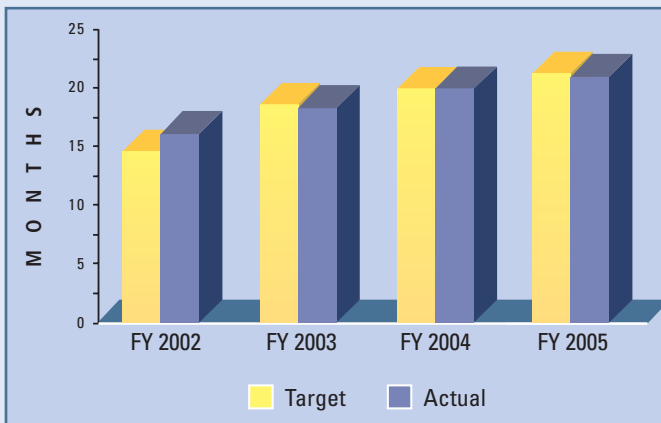
**Discussion:** Target met. The improvement in the in-process compliance rate indicates that the quality initiatives previously implemented, such as targeted training, are producing the desired results.

In support of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, the USPTO will reduce patent pendency and substantially cut the size of the work backlog. The two primary measures of Patent organization processing time are: (1) average first action pendency, which measures the average time in months from filing until an examiner's initial determination is made of the patentability of an invention; and (2) average total pendency, which measures the average time in months from filing until the application is issued as a patent or the average application is abandoned by the applicant.

## PENDENCY

### MEASURE: Patent Average First Action Pendency

#### PATENT AVERAGE FIRST ACTION PENDENCY



#### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** PALM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** PALM, automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the PALM system. Final test for reasonableness is performed internally by patent examiners, supervisors, and program management analysts.

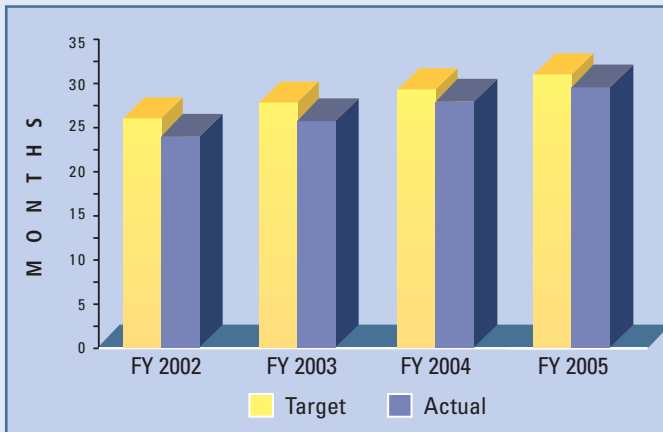
**Data Limitations:** None.

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<span style="color: yellow;">■</span> <b>Target (months)</b>	14.7	18.4	20.2	21.3
<span style="color: blue;">■</span> <b>Actual (months)</b>	16.7	18.3	20.2	21.1 met

**Discussion:** Target met. The initiatives identified in the USPTO *21st Century Strategic Plan* and aggressive hiring of highly qualified new examiners, will ultimately reduce pendency, decrease the work backlog, and recover our investments in people, processes, and technology.

**MEASURE: Patent Average Total Pendency**

**PATENT AVERAGE TOTAL PENDENCY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** PALM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** PALM, automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the PALM system. Final test for reasonableness is performed internally by patent examiners, supervisors, and program management analysts.

**Data Limitations:** None.

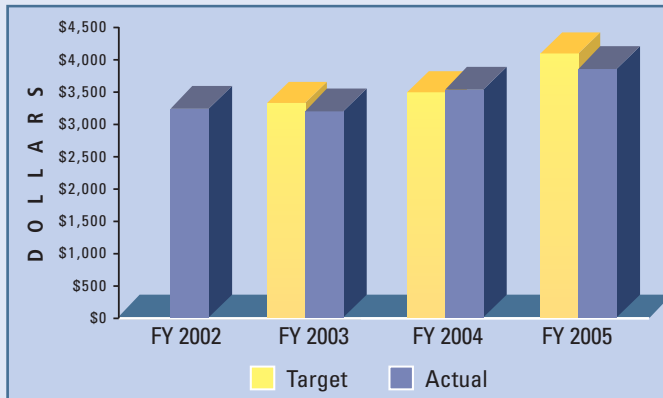
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target (months)</b>	26.5	27.7	29.8	31.0
<b>Actual (months)</b>	24.0	26.7	27.6	29.1 <i>met</i>

**Discussion:** Target met. The initiatives identified in the USPTO 21st Century Strategic Plan will, over several years, reduce total patent pendency.

**MEASURE: Patent Efficiency**

This measure<sup>1</sup> is a relative indicator of the efficiency of the patent process as measured by the total cost of programs that support the examination of patents compared to its core outputs.

**PATENT EFFICIENCY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data Source:** PALM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, quarterly reporting.  
**Data storage:** PALM, Data Warehouse, Metify Activity Based Management (ABM).  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in PALM, Momentum, Metify ABM. Quality control review of data by Activity-Based Cost Accounting (ABC) and Program Business Teams.

**Data Limitations:** None.

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	\$3,444	\$3,502	\$4,122
<b>Actual</b>	\$3,376	\$3,329	\$3,556	\$3,877 <sup>1</sup> <i>met</i>

**Discussion:** Target met.

<sup>1</sup>This number is preliminary. Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.

<sup>1</sup> The USPTO recognizes that there is an inherent difference between the projected obligations in a President's budget that are used to calculate the efficiency measure target, and the actual expenses that are used to calculate the end of year results. This is primarily a timing problem in that targets are calculated 18 months in advance. The USPTO has formed a group of financial management experts to identify alternatives for a better way of calculating this metric.



## PATENT COMMISSIONER'S PERFORMANCE FOR FY 2005

The AIPA, Title VI, and Subtitle G, the Patent and Trademark Office Efficiency Act, established the USPTO as an agency of the United States, within DOC, on March 29, 2000. The legislation provides for appointment of a Commissioner for Patents as the Chief Operating Officer for Patents, and a Commissioner for Trademarks as the Chief Operating Officer for Trademarks. It also requires that an annual performance agreement be established between the Commissioners and the Secretary of Commerce. The agreement outlines measurable organizational goals and objectives for the organization. The Commissioners may be rewarded a bonus, based upon an evaluation of their performance as defined in the agreement, of up to 50 percent of their base salary.

The Patent organization goals form the foundation for the annual performance agreement between the Commissioner for Patents and the Secretary of Commerce, as required by the AIPA. The performance agreement outlines measurable organizational goals and objectives for the Patent organization based on the performance goals and measures. These performance measures incorporate the milestones and objectives to achieve the following Patent goals: improve quality of examination, implement e-government initiatives, and achieve the lowest possible pendency. At the time of publication, no determination regarding a performance bonus for the Commissioner of Patents had yet been made.

## THE PATENT ORGANIZATION – WHAT'S AHEAD

The USPTO must address the challenges of rising workloads, the shift of applications from traditional arts to more complex technologies, and changes in the timing of some of the milestones of the *Strategic Plan* which will delay the efficiency gains outlined in the *Plan*.

In FY 2006, we will continue to emphasize the importance of quality and timely examination by continuing and building on programs currently in place. We will also focus on the hiring, training, and retention of our employees. In January 2006, the Patent organization will pilot an eight-month, university-style training program for new patent examiners. The program will provide participants with a more structured initial training so that they will have a better understanding of the examination process and be better equipped to effectively contribute after assignment to a technology center. The existing Patent Examining Initial Training program will run concurrently until the new university concept is reviewed and fully implemented.

In recognition of the vital importance of technical support in building an efficient examining organization, we will design a certification program for the technical support staff in FY 2006. To ensure that patent examiner candidates possess the needed competencies to succeed, and to improve the efficiency of the hiring process, the Patent organization will develop, with

*A class of newly hired patent examiners receives training on the role and responsibilities of being a patent examiner.*



an on-line pre-employment screening tool. Reviews of work products throughout prosecution to ensure compliance with examination practice and procedures standards will continue, and feedback from these reviews will drive our training programs. In combination, these initiatives will improve patent quality.

During FY 2005 the Patent organization initiated a program to ensure that applications filed under existing provisions to request expedited examination for certain subject matter areas or under certain circumstances are acted on timely. During FY 2006 the Patent organization will review the existing program and consider revising the accelerated examination provision to provide guaranteed final examiner disposition within 12 months if applicants share a greater burden in assisting the examiner. Any subject matter would be eligible for this provision of expedited examination.

Both the Patent and Trademark operations are rapidly moving to eliminate paper documents from their processes. As the reliance on paper disappears from internal processes, the costs for handling applications and related materials will be substantially reduced. The deployment of a web-based electronic filing system accommodating PDF attachments, in conjunction with a marketing program to inform patent applicants of the availability and benefits of the system, will encourage more applicants to file electronically.

The Patent organization is also looking at proposed rule changes that are directed to supplementing improvements in effective examination quality. There are pendency reduction benefits with some of these changes although the main focus is on quality. These proposed changes, if implemented, are anticipated to become effective no earlier than FY 2007.



*Chief Administrative Patent Judge Michael Fleming and other BPAI officials demonstrate the video features of the new electronic hearing room.*

## **BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES (BPAI)**

The BPAI was very successful in FY 2005. The average pendency for decided patent appeals before the Board has been reduced to less than six months. Similarly, the average pendency for interferences is now less than 12 months. Furthermore, the final decisions in over 80 percent of all interferences were mailed within 24 months. During the course of the year, the BPAI also held its first remote video hearings at the new state-of-the-art electronic hearing room. With respect to e-government, almost all patent appeals at BPAI are now in electronic form. Additionally, based upon the success of the pilot program for processing interferences in electronic form, the Board has started the development of a full-scale electronic filing and information system for interferences. This automation effort will also lay the groundwork for the implementation of the proposed post-grant review proceedings that are currently planned to be conducted in the future at the Board as a part of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*.



## TRADEMARK PERFORMANCE



*Under Secretary Dudas congratulates Commissioner for Trademarks Lynne Beresford after swearing her in.*

The Trademark organization continues to build upon its progress toward achieving the e-government objectives of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, which relies on electronic communications to offer market based services and improve the availability of trademark information to more effectively serve an increasingly larger, global client-base. Electronic access increases the opportunity for filing for federal registration, which provides protection to business owners and consumers by providing notice of marks in use. Electronic filing and information systems serve customers in two very important ways: by improving the time and accessibility of information and by improving the quality of the initial application and therefore the quality of the data that is captured and shared in the publication and registration of trademarks.

The USPTO established more options for filing a trademark registration, consistent with its *21st Century Strategic Plan*, to create financial and market-based incentives and encourage

greater participation in the U.S. trademark system. Trademark owners can now select the option that best meets their needs — with the highest fees for filing on paper, lower fees for filing electronically, and the lowest fees for both filing and prosecuting electronically. The trademark user community has benefited from the introduction of three options for filing for registration, which has allowed trademark filers to pay \$1.7 million less in filing fees than they otherwise would have paid. In the first eleven weeks when customers had a choice of three options for filing, 10 percent of applications were filed on paper, 68 percent were filed electronically, and 22 percent were filed under the newest option with the lowest filing fee.

The USPTO achieved a major milestone in maximizing electronic tools to make the trademark registration process fully transparent to the public through the Trademark Document Retrieval (TDR) System, anyone with Internet access anywhere in the world can review documents in the official trademark application file, including all decisions made by trademark examining attorneys and their reasons for making them.

The USPTO has discontinued the practice of creating and maintaining paper file copies of trademark applications and now relies exclusively on trademark data submitted or captured electronically to support trademark examination, publication of documents, and granting of registrations. During FY 2005, a number of improvements were made that increased efficiency and provided better internal controls for tracking the status of correspondence and progress of work performed and completed. These changes in practice are a result of the on-going progress made in creating and using electronic records to process and examine applications filed for registration of a trademark. A complete electronic records database covering all trademark applications including ongoing correspondence was created by capturing the text and image of nearly 500,000 pending paper files and documents. The database supports paperless examination as the source of application records used within the Trademark organization.

Electronic systems continued to be upgraded to increase the number and type of transactions that can be completed. Significant process changes and enhancements have been incorporated that provide the capability to manage all examiner actions and dockets in a completely electronic environment as well as manage the assignment of new applications. Changes were made in the past year to eliminate the need for manual processing of files for transactions that are required to process marks for publication and registration. These changes improve workflow functionality and eliminate the need to have paper files to manage the work and take office actions for the core trademark examination and registration process.

Electronic communications make it possible to conduct a preliminary search prior to filing an application; determine the status of pending and registered trademarks; respond to office actions; access general information, examination manuals, treaties, laws and regulations; obtain weekly information on marks published, registered, and renewed; file initial applications; and maintain a registered mark through the USPTO website. The USPTO publishes a weekly Trademark Official Gazette that contains information covering several thousand marks and other office actions electronically. The weekly publication is fully electronic; text and images that contain the layout are extracted from electronic records and sent to the Government Printing Office for printing registration certificates. The weekly Trademark Official Gazette, Registration Certificates, and Updated Registration Certificates for the five most recent weekly issues are available electronically from the USPTO website. The entire publication, including registration certificates, are available as a PDF file that can be downloaded free via the Internet, providing expanded, as well as more timely access to trademark information.

The USPTO achieved several milestones by expanding the content and accessibility of trademark information in the past year. In the seven years since electronic filing first became available, more than 716,000 applications, including more than 900,000 classes, have been filed for the registration of a trademark. Today, more than 88 percent of all new trademark applications are filed using the award-winning Trademark Electronic Application System (TEAS), an increase of more than 21 percent over FY 2004 results.

Over the past year, the Trademark organization has continued to enhance the features available to the public as well as working to ensure the overall transformation of the Trademark organization as an effective e-government operation. Twenty-six electronic TEAS forms are now available and new forms have been added in the past year, expanding the number and type of transactions that can be completed on-line. The availability of more types of transactions as well as the convenience of trademark related information available via the Internet, improves our ability to provide timely, useful information, as well as stimulating demand for more services.

TEAS was recognized in FY 2005 as one of five winners at the Excellence.Gov Awards ceremony in Washington, D.C. on February 9th as an example of a best practice in federal e-government implementation. TEAS was selected from a pool of 80 outstanding federal e-government programs that demonstrated high customer satisfaction, strong market segment penetration, broad stakeholder acceptance, and improved program utilization over time.



*Congressman Tom Feeney (R-FL), who serves on the Financial Services and Judiciary committees and represents Florida's 24th District (center), listens as senior trademark attorney Terry Rupp (left), explains trademark searching.*



### ***Madrid Protocol***

The process of registering trademarks in one or more of the 60 members of the Madrid Protocol has been greatly improved since the United States became a member of the Madrid Protocol on November 2, 2003. U.S. business owners are now able to file a single application with the USPTO in English, pay in U.S. dollars, and potentially have their mark protected in any or all of the Members of the Protocol. Non-U.S. trademark owners of Madrid members may elect to seek an extension of protection of their international registration in the U.S. by filing through the International Bureau of the WIPO. The USPTO received 2,772 international applications and 9,976 requests for extension of protection or subsequent designation containing 19,635 classes from the International Bureau under the Protocol.

### ***Trilateral Project***

Representatives from the USPTO, the European Union's Office of Harmonization in the Internal Market (OHIM), and the Japan Patent Office (JPO) continue their work on harmonization of identifications project. The objective of the Trilateral Identification and Classification Manual Project is to make the trademark application and examination process easier by agreeing on the acceptability of certain identifications of goods and services for use in all three offices. The Trademark Identification Manual is updated to incorporate identifications for goods and services that have been accepted as a result of efforts through this project.

The USPTO began development of a secure web site to enable representatives from the USPTO, OHIM, and JPO to add to, delete from, or modify the identifications of goods and services that were accepted during the first phase of Trilateral Identification and Classification Manual Project. Future work on the web site will include incorporating the suggestions and comments of representatives from OHIM and JPO. The site is expected to be available in FY 2006.

### ***Quality***

During the past year, the Trademark organization worked to establish a more consistent quality measure that would better reflect the current quality of examination. The criteria expands on the issues that are considered for determining the quality of "in-process" first and final office actions as "excellent" and "deficient" to better reflect more meaningful and rigorous standards of quality. The information from these reviews has been used to identify and focus training to enhance overall product quality and to improve the consistency of examination. Four new training modules under section 2(a) and (d) of the Trademark Act were prepared to address some of the recurring problems that were determined based on analyses of the reviews. Examiners are required to take a series of self-paced tutorials in support of the USPTO's commitment to improve the quality of examination and ensure all that all Examiners maintain the knowledge and skills necessary to perform their jobs.

### ***Customer Call Center***

The USPTO operates a modern call center system with customer relationship management technology to enhance its effectiveness in handling and responding to customer calls and inquiries. The call center is a state-of-the-art web-based information system which enables agents to manage customer data, track problems, fulfill information requests, answer e-mails, and provide consistent information. Data is used to identify trends, track problem resolution, conduct root cause analysis, and take action to prevent and eliminate the recurrence of problems.

### ***Telecommuting***

The USPTO continues to gain recognition as a leader in the federal government for its successful telecommuting program. The Trademark telecommuting program was designed so that examiners could perform the same work and access the same IT systems from home as they do in the office. Examiners work from home for a majority of the workweek using an automated reservation system to assign office space on an as-needed basis. The program met its objective to greatly reduce office space requirements and costs. The Trademark program was expanded to include 190 examiners in the past year. Sixty-nine percent of the eligible examiners now take advantage of the program. The program continues to be expanded to include other employees throughout the Trademark organization.

### ***Filings***

New application filings for trademark registration increased by 8.4 percent in the past year. The USPTO received 259,932 trademark applications, including 323,501 classes for registration in FY 2005.

### ***Office Disposals***

Total office disposals were 205,378, including 252,275 classes, 0.5 percent above plan. Registrations were one percent above plan although registrations decreased by more than eight percent from the prior year to 112,495 including 143,396 classes as the number of pending applications remaining from prior years with higher filings continue to be disposed.

### ***Pending Inventory***

Total trademark applications pending in the USPTO increased by more than ten percent in FY 2005 to 497,394 with 653,000 classes. Twenty percent of the pending file inventory is in a post-Notice of Allowance status awaiting the filing of a statement of use. The inventory of unexamined applications at the end of the year was 140,705 containing 171,230 classes; the number of files increased 10.7 percent from the prior fiscal year with numbers of classes increasing by 13.2 percent.

## **PERFORMANCE GOAL: *Improve the quality of trademark products and services and optimize trademark processing time***

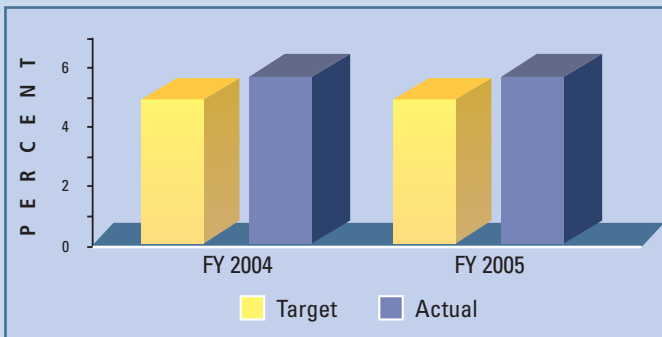
Under the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, the USPTO will continue to work with our intellectual property partners to improve the efficiency of our processing systems by increasing the number of applications and communications received and processed electronically, create more coordinated and streamlined work processes, and best position the USPTO for the globalization that characterizes the 21st century economy. The following performance measure has been established to reflect the USPTO's success and progress in meeting Trademark *Strategic Plan* goals.

## **TRADEMARK QUALITY**

### **MEASURE: *Trademark Final Action Deficiency Rate***

The Trademark organization implemented two new measures for assessing examination quality in FY 2004 that includes an evaluation for all issues that could be considered deficient in making a substantive refusal. Evaluations are conducted on a random sample of applications to review the quality of decision making of the examiner's first office action and final action refusal. In FY 2005, 2,253 files were reviewed with 4.7 percent of the files having at least one deficient substantive refusal. Also 2,299 files were reviewed with at least one issue determined for a final action deficiency rate of 5.9 percent.

## FINAL ACTION DEFICIENCY RATE



### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** Office of Trademark Quality Review Report.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** Automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Manual reports and analysis.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

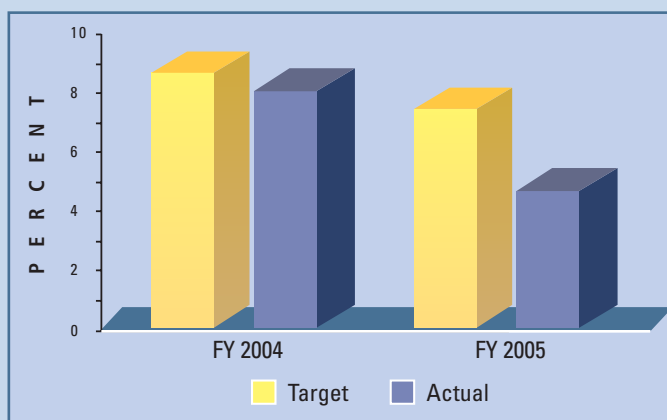
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	—	5.0%	5.0%
<b>Actual</b>	—	—	5.8%	5.9% <i>not met</i>

**Discussion:** Target not met. We failed to meet this year's target as a conscious effort was made to initially focus on first action quality, which results in applications receiving a high-quality initial examination. In FY 2005 we exceeded the first action deficiency rate by over 60%. The Trademark organization believes that building quality at the beginning of the process will yield higher quality throughout the process.

We plan on meeting our goal next year as we have implemented quality initiatives to address the current shortcomings. These initiatives are already making an impact; the error rate for the second half of FY 2005 was significantly lower than the error rate at the start of the year. We anticipate further long-term quality improvements in FY 2006.

## MEASURE: Trademark First Action Deficiency Rate

## FIRST ACTION DEFICIENCY RATE



### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** Office of Trademark Quality Review Report.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** Automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Manual reports and analysis.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

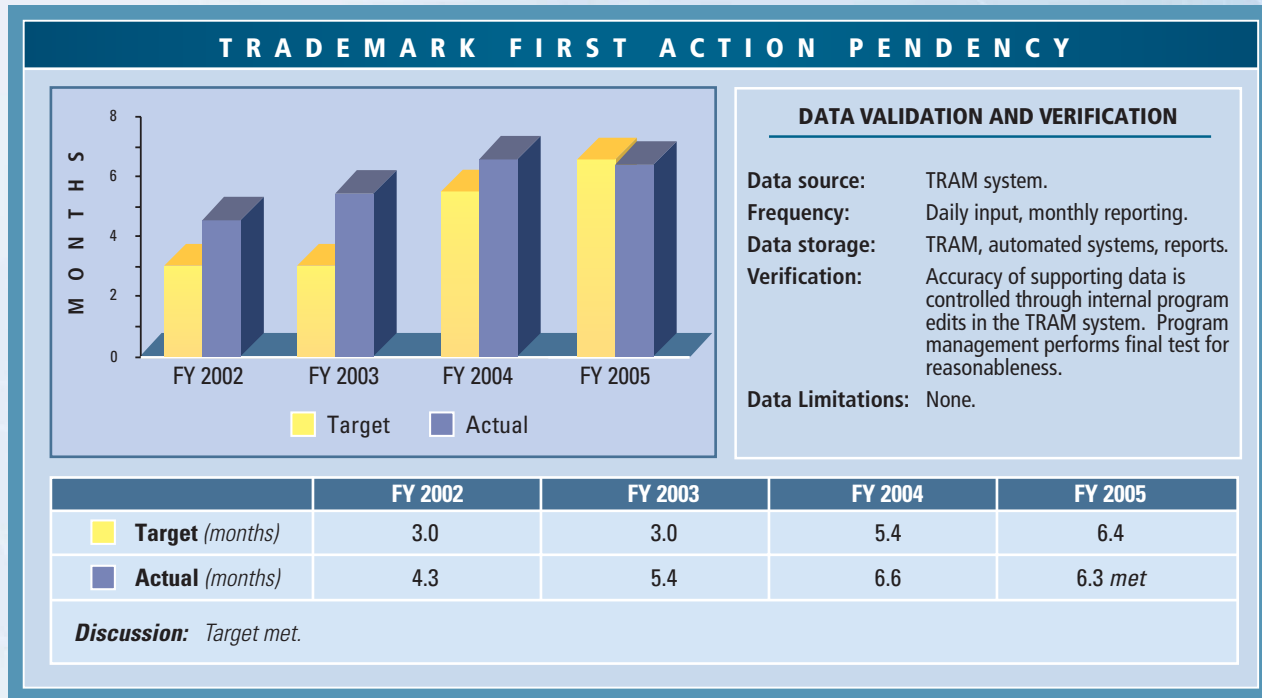
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	—	8.3%	7.5%
<b>Actual</b>	—	—	7.9%	4.7% <i>met</i>

**Discussion:** Target met. The Trademark organization established an "in-process review" standard for assessing excellent and deficient work to create a more comprehensive, meaningful, and rigorous review of what constitutes quality. The results of an examiner's first action are reviewed for the quality of the substantive basis for decision-making, search strategy, evidence, and writing. The new measure considers more elements for review and evaluation with training targeted to topics that warrant improvement. Examiners are given specific feedback about excellent as well as deficient work to further improve quality. Quality results achieved exceeded the target set.

## TRADEMARK PENDENCY

**MEASURE:** *Reduce average first action pendency*

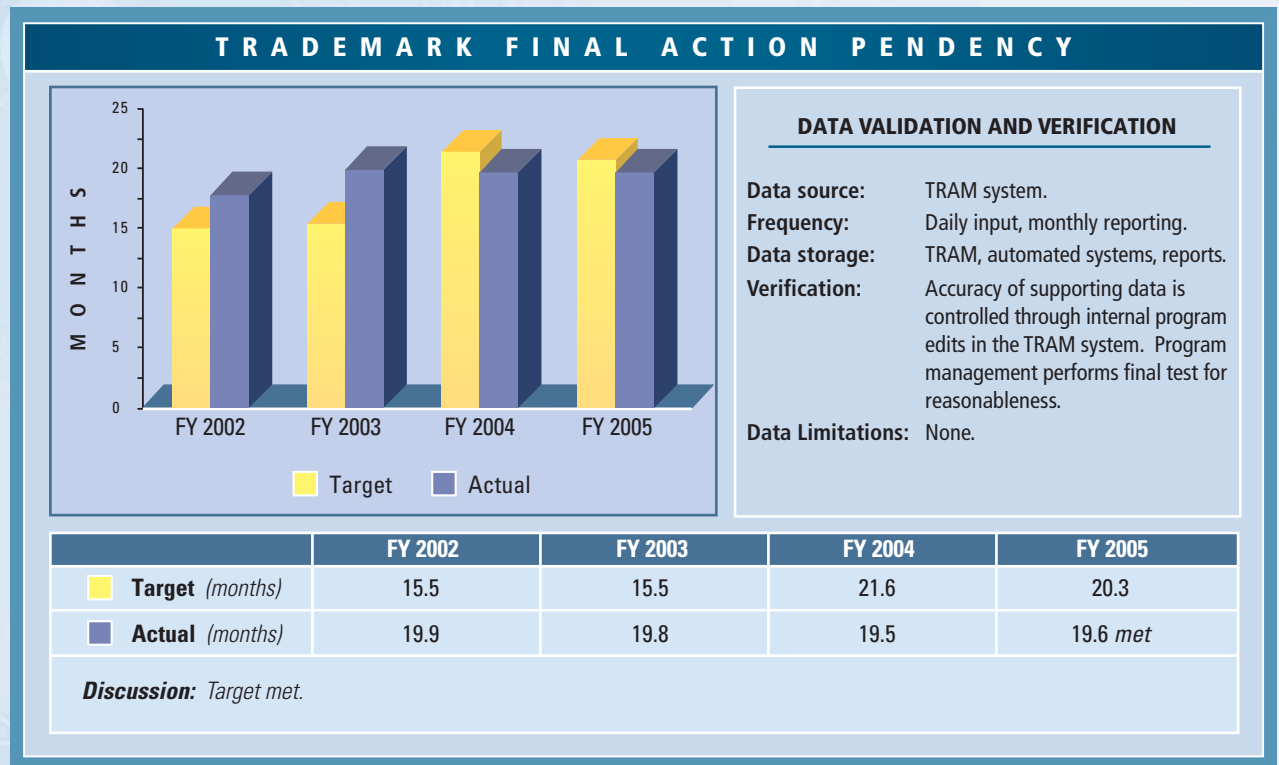
This measure reflects the timeliness of the first office action as measured from the date of application filing to the mailing of the first action.





**MEASURE: Reduce average total pendency**

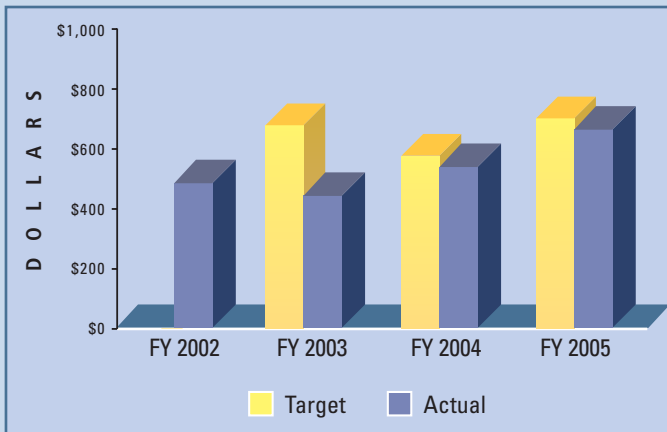
This measure reflects the timeliness related to the disposal of a trademark application as measured from the date of filing to registration, abandonment or issuance of a notice of allowance including applications that are suspended awaiting further action or involved in inter partes proceedings. Disposal pendency including suspended and inter partes cases was 19.6 months. Excluding applications that were suspended or delayed for inter partes proceedings, disposal pendency was 17.2 months.



**MEASURE: Trademark Efficiency**

This measure<sup>1</sup> is a relative indicator of the efficiency of the trademark process as measured by the total cost of programs that support the examination and registration of trademarks compared to its core outputs.

**TRADEMARK EFFICIENCY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** TRAM system, Momentum, Metify ABM.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, quarterly reporting.  
**Data storage:** TRAM, Data Warehouse, Metify ABM.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in TRAM, Momentum, Metify ABM. Quality control review of data by ABC and Program Business Teams.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	\$683	\$583	\$701
<b>Actual</b>	\$487	\$433	\$542	\$677 <sup>1</sup> met

**Discussion:** Target met. The measure indicates the degree to which the program can operate within plan costs relative to outputs produced. The measure is calculated by dividing total USPTO expenses associated with the examination and processing of trademarks (including associated overhead and support expenses) by outputs (office disposals). It should be noted that this measure does not represent the average cost to process, examine, and register a trademark since office disposals are but one measure of USPTO products and services.

<sup>1</sup>This number is preliminary. Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.

**TRADEMARK COMMISSIONER'S PERFORMANCE FOR FY 2005**

The AIPA, Title VI, Subtitle G, the Patent and Trademark Office Efficiency Act, established the USPTO as an agency of the United States, within DOC, on March 29, 2000. The legislation provides for appointment of a Commissioner for Patents as the Chief Operating Officer for Patents, and a Commissioner for Trademarks as the Chief Operating Officer for Trademarks. It also requires that an annual performance agreement be established between the Commissioners and the Secretary of Commerce. The agreement outlines measurable organizational goals and objectives for the organization. The Commissioners may be rewarded a bonus, based upon an evaluation of their performance as defined in the agreement, of up to 50 percent of their base salary.

<sup>1</sup> The USPTO recognizes that there is an inherent difference between the projected obligations in a President's budget that are used to calculate the efficiency measure target, and the actual expenses that are used to calculate the end of year results. This is primarily a timing problem in that targets are calculated 18 months in advance. The USPTO has formed a group of financial management experts to identify alternatives for a better way of calculating this metric.

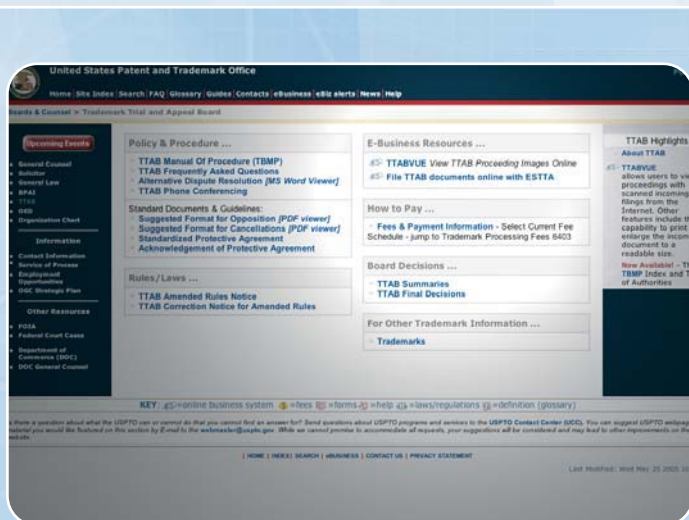
The Trademark Business goals formed the foundation for the annual performance agreement between the Commissioner for Trademarks and the Secretary of Commerce, as required by the AIPA. The performance agreement outlined measurable organizational goals and objectives for the Trademark Business based on the above goals and performance measures. Eight of the nine trademark performance measures included in the agency performance plan were met for a score of 89 percent. The Commissioner's performance for the past year had not been evaluated at the time that this report was completed.

## THE TRADEMARK ORGANIZATION – WHAT'S AHEAD

The Trademark organization will continue to move aggressively in the next year to implement the objectives of the *21st Century Strategic Plan* by completing the redesign of its operations to use e-government as the primary means of doing business with applicants and registrants, and as the sole means for processing work inside the examining operation.

The Trademark organization has achieved considerable success in implementing its business process reengineering plan to move from primarily doing business with paper to doing business in an electronic environment. Completion of an electronic file management system, in addition to our currently available electronic filing and information systems, permits:

- Reduction in cycle times by consolidating separate processes and eliminating the potential for lost or missing papers that create additional delays and poor service;
- Enhancements in the functionality and number of electronic filing options; and
- Ability to offer a totally electronic filing and receiving process to handle applications from U.S. applicants seeking protection of their mark in foreign countries, and requests for protection of marks from foreign countries in the United States.



*TTAB e-government enhancements help it reach pendency goals.*

As paper records disappear from internal processes, the cost for handling applications and related materials, along with the reliance on increasing numbers of employees or contractors to handle increases in filings, will continue to decrease. Data quality has improved as data is captured electronically to support examination and to publish documents and registrations. Electronic file management presents an opportunity for the USPTO to offer multiple options for filing that allow applicants to select the method of filing that best suits their business needs.

## TRADEMARK TRIAL AND APPEAL BOARD (TTAB)

The TTAB met its pendency goal in FY 2005. The goal was to issue final decisions and decisions on trial motions, on average, within ten weeks of the time they were submitted for decision. During FY 2005, the TTAB issued decisions, on average, in nine and a half weeks.

In FY 2005, the TTAB added two options to its suite of electronic filing forms. Now, changes of correspondence address may be updated using the TTAB's electronic filing system. Also, parties in contested cases may electronically file most consented motions, which are granted automatically. By the end of FY 2005, 84 percent of extensions of time to oppose were being received and processed electronically, as were 58 percent of notices of opposition and 59 percent of petitions to cancel. Finally, the TTAB held its first electronic oral hearing in the electronic courtroom it shares with the BPAI. The electronic courtroom permits parties to appear before TTAB and BPAI from remote teleconferencing locations.

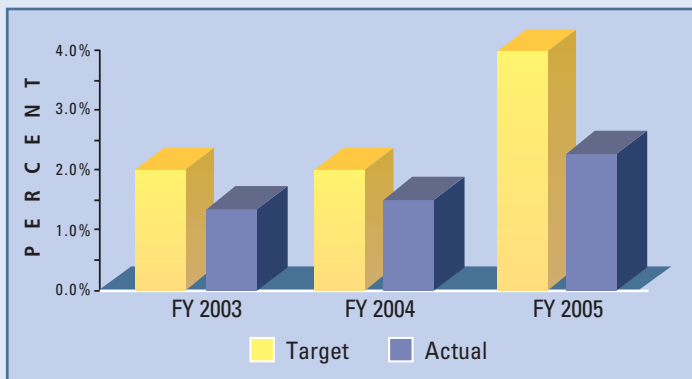
## E-GOVERNMENT AND INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY PERFORMANCE

**PERFORMANCE GOAL:** *Create a more flexible organization through transitioning the patent and trademark processes to e-government operations and participating in intellectual property development worldwide*

Under the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, the USPTO will work with our intellectual property partners to improve the efficiency of our processing systems by increasing the number of applications and communications received and processed electronically, create more coordinated and streamlined work processes, and best position the USPTO for the globalization that characterizes the 21st century economy. The following performance measures have been established to reflect the USPTO's success and progress in meeting the *Strategic Plan* goals.

### MEASURE: *Patent Applications Filed Electronically*

#### PATENT APPLICATIONS FILED ELECTRONICALLY



#### DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION

**Data source:** PALM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, weekly reporting.  
**Data storage:** PALM and automated systems.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the PALM system and cross checks against other automated systems.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	2.0%	2.0%	4.0%
<b>Actual</b>	—	1.3%	1.5%	2.2% <sup>1</sup> not met

**Discussion:** Target not met. This measure indicates USPTO's support of, and applicants' willingness to operate in, an e-government environment and identifies the percent of patent applications filed electronically. In FY 2005, the agency held multiple forums to identify specific components of patent applicants' reluctance to file electronically. Customer needs and concerns were translated to system requirements, resulting in the design of a web-based system with PDF attachments, which will be piloted in December 2005.

For next year's target we are implementing user community suggested changes to increase acceptance of our electronic filing system.

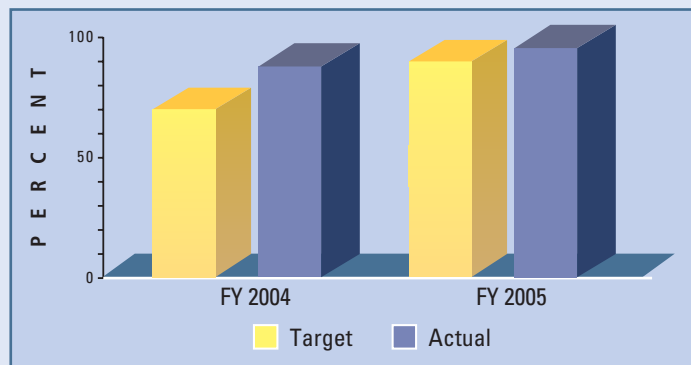
<sup>1</sup>This number is preliminary. Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.



**MEASURE: Patent Applications Managed Electronically**

The USPTO has eliminated the movement of paper patent applications by creating an electronic image of all patent applications. The IFW system is used by all patent examiners, technical support staff, and adjunct users. Although the patent application process is fully electronic with the IFW system, the USPTO will be deploying a text-based process in FY 2006. The text-based process will allow the USPTO to provide more automation of manual processes, will improve accuracy and reliability, and will allow greater electronic management of the patent system.

**PATENT APPLICATIONS MANAGED ELECTRONICALLY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** PALM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, weekly reporting.  
**Data storage:** PALM and automated systems.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the PALM system and cross checks against other automated systems.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

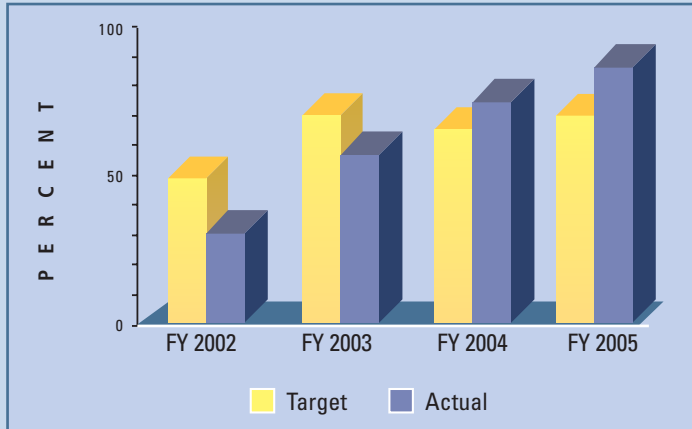
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<span style="color: yellow;">■</span> <b>Target</b>	—	—	70%	90%
<span style="color: purple;">■</span> <b>Actual</b>	—	—	88%	96.7% met

**Discussion:** Target met.



**MEASURE: Trademark Applications Filed Electronically**

**TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS FILED ELECTRONICALLY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** TRAM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** TRAM and automated systems.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the TRAM system and crosschecks against other automated systems.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

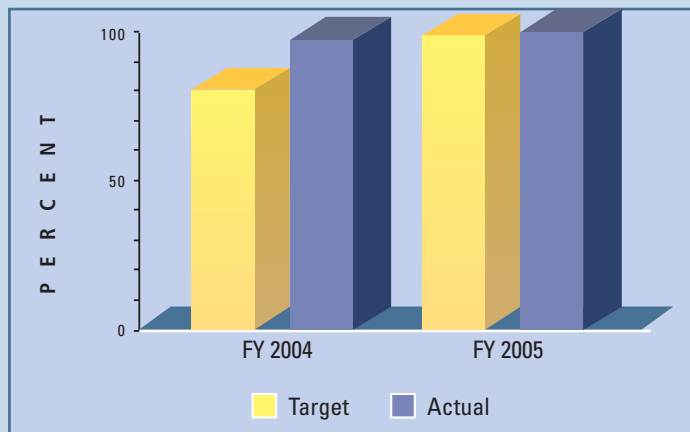
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	50%	80%	65%	70%
<b>Actual</b>	38%	57.5%	73%	88% met

**Discussion:** Target met. The measure indicates USPTO's support of and applicants' willingness to operate in an e-government environment and identifies the percent of basic trademark applications filed electronically. Total electronic filings increased by nearly 21 percent over FY 2004 results. The rate of filing trademark applications has progressed steadily over the years as a result of promotional events, increased number and type of applications and documents that may be filed electronically, and improved functionality and enhancements that have been made to appeal to more customers.

**MEASURE: Trademark Applications Managed Electronically**

This measure was introduced in FY 2004 to demonstrate the progress the Trademark organization has made to examine and process applications in a completely electronic environment. The Trademark organization has captured nearly 100 percent of the application inventory as an electronic file record that includes text and image of the initial application and subsequent applicant and office correspondence for nearly 500,000 pending applications. Examining attorneys have been using the electronic record of the initial application to conduct their first office actions since July 2003 through a system that manages the workflow and their transactions. In July 2004 second and subsequent actions were added eliminating the need to use paper files to process and examine applications for the core examination function. In January 2005 the contents were accessible to the public with the introduction of the TDR System.

**TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS MANAGED ELECTRONICALLY**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** TRAM system.  
**Frequency:** Daily input, weekly reporting.  
**Data storage:** TRAM and automated systems.  
**Verification:** Accuracy of supporting data is controlled through internal program edits in the TRAM system and crosschecks against other automated systems.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

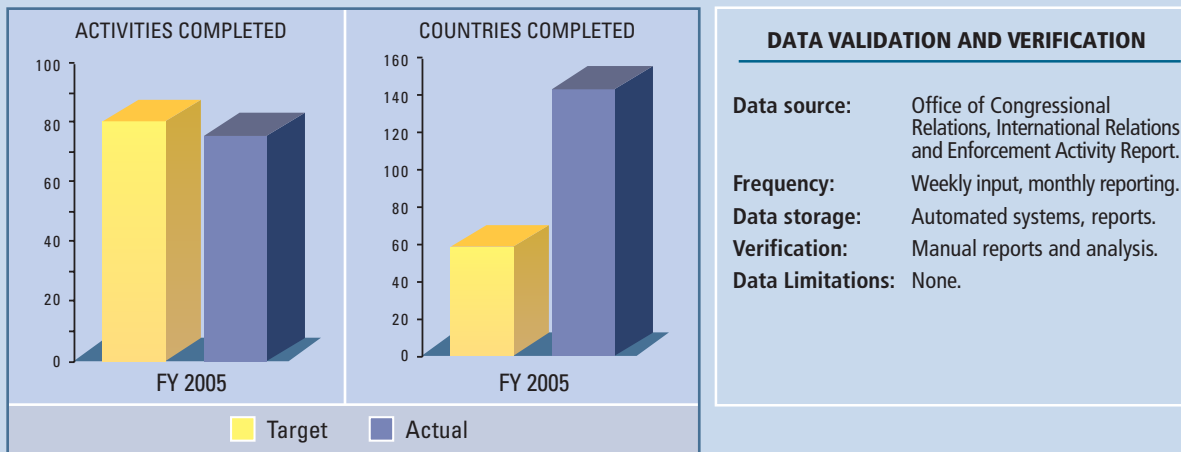
	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<span style="color: yellow;">■</span> <b>Target</b>	—	—	80%	99.0%
<span style="color: purple;">■</span> <b>Actual</b>	—	—	98%	99.9% <i>met</i>

**Discussion:** *Target met. The measure indicates the USPTO's progress towards conducting business in an e-government environment.*

**MEASURE: Intellectual Property Technical Assistance Activities/Countries Completed**

This measure was introduced in FY 2005 to demonstrate the number and variety of training and technical assistance activities provided to the intellectual property offices and staff of countries with developing economies in need of strengthening the protection of intellectual property rights as part of their economic and trade development. Attorney specialists from the Office of International Relations and the Office of Enforcement provide country specific review of intellectual property laws, and recommend strengthened enforcement provisions along with training of judges, prosecutors, customs officials, and intellectual property office technical staff. Broader multilateral training programs, such as the intellectual property Enforcement Academy and the Visiting Scholars Program, are offered to representatives of a variety of countries throughout the year.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE ACTIVITIES/COUNTRIES COMPLETED**



**DATA VALIDATION AND VERIFICATION**

**Data source:** Office of Congressional Relations, International Relations and Enforcement Activity Report.  
**Frequency:** Weekly input, monthly reporting.  
**Data storage:** Automated systems, reports.  
**Verification:** Manual reports and analysis.  
**Data Limitations:** None.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE ACTIVITIES COMPLETED**

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	—	—	80
<b>Actual</b>	—	—	—	59 not met

**Discussion:** Target not met. Technical assistance is, generally, a demand driven activity. While the raw number of activities extracted for this measure was lower than the target, many activities were regional or consolidated, involving multiple countries. This multiplier effect is evidenced by the fact that the number of countries involved greatly exceeded that target.

We plan on meeting our goal next year by offering technical advice and assistance in the form of our technical experts providing a review of developing countries intellectual property laws and legal system (patents, trademarks, copyrights, enforcement of IP rights through criminal penalties, customs requirements and prosecutorial and judicial training) for compliance with the international trade standard of the World Trade Organization (WTO) Trade Related Aspects of Intellectual Property (TRIPS). Membership in the WTO takes place through a lengthy accession process. A developing country wishing to join and take advantage of the trading privileges of membership might shorten the accession process by several years by having their country's laws in compliance with WTO's requirements. We believe this proactive technical assistance will help us achieve our goal.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE COUNTRIES COMPLETED**

	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Target</b>	—	—	—	75
<b>Actual</b>	—	—	—	142 met

**Discussion:** Target met.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY POLICY AND LEADERSHIP PERFORMANCE

The DOC and the USPTO are diligently working to help curb intellectual property theft and strengthen intellectual property enforcement in every corner of the globe. As the largest intellectual property office in the world, the USPTO is leading efforts to develop and strengthen domestic and international intellectual property protection.

In October 2004, the Bush Administration launched the STOP! initiative, which is the most comprehensive U.S. Government-wide initiative created to combat trade in pirated and counterfeit goods. The initiative is a collaboration of the Departments of Commerce, Justice, Homeland Security, and the Office of the USTR. The goal of the STOP! program is to prevent international piracy and counterfeiting and protect U.S. businesses, especially small and medium-sized enterprises, overseas. What makes the STOP! initiative so unprecedented is that for the first time, the issues surrounding intellectual property enforcement have been raised to the highest levels in the Administration. For the past four years, this Administration has vigorously worked to enforce intellectual property rights and clearly understands that intellectual property is a vital component of our nation's economy. STOP! allows us to leverage the Administration's efforts to provide new innovative solutions to better protect our nation's intellectual property rights. The STOP! initiative has brought together all the major players at the highest levels — the federal government, private sector, and trade partners — and is the culmination of a lengthy, multi-agency effort, in consultation with the private sector and Congress.

As part of STOP!, the USPTO manages a hotline (1-866-999-HALT) that helps small- and medium-sized businesses leverage the resources of the U.S. Government to protect their intellectual property rights in the United States and abroad. The USPTO has established a link from the USPTO website to [www.stopfakes.gov](http://www.stopfakes.gov) on DOC's website, which provides in-depth detail of the STOP! initiative. One key feature of the website is the country specific "Toolkits" that have been created by our embassies overseas

to assist small- and medium-sized businesses with intellectual property rights issues in China, Korea, Mexico, Taiwan, and Russia, with additional toolkits to be posted soon.

STOP! also seeks to increase global awareness of the risks and consequences of intellectual property crimes through a section of its website, [www.stopfakes.com/smallbusiness](http://www.stopfakes.com/smallbusiness), that is specifically designed and operated by the USPTO to answer common questions of small businesses so they can better identify and address their intellectual property protection needs.

DOC is in charge of another important component of the STOP! Initiative: the no-trade-in-fakes program that is being developed in cooperation with the private sector. This is a voluntary, industry driven set of guidelines and a corporate compliance program that participating companies will use to ensure their supply chains and retail networks are free of counterfeit or pirated goods. In addition, CBP maintains a trademark recordation system for marks registered at the USPTO to assist the CBP in its efforts to prevent the importation of goods that infringe registered marks. In FY 2005, the USPTO began mailing notices to new trademark registrants directing them to the services that CBP offers, as well as established a website link on the USPTO homepage which contains the CBP form for recordation.



*Under Secretary Dudas speaks to small business owners at the "Conference on Intellectual Property in the Global Marketplace", in Miami, FL.*



While counterfeiting and piracy pose a serious threat to all American businesses, small businesses are particularly at risk since they often lack the knowledge and expertise to effectively combat it. Because small businesses typically do not have personnel or maintain large operations in other countries, theft of their intellectual property overseas can go undetected. As part of the STOP! initiative, the USPTO has launched an intensive national public awareness campaign to help educate small businesses on protecting their intellectual property both here and abroad.

In FY 2005, the USPTO began a conference series targeting small- and medium-sized businesses where participants learn what intellectual property rights are, why they are important, and how to protect and enforce these rights. Four workshops were conducted throughout the country in FY 2005. The USPTO will continue to hold small-business outreach seminars in FY 2006 to give American businesses face-to-face contact with intellectual property experts. The USPTO also participated in a China road show in FY 2005 in several U.S. cities for companies ranging from small businesses contemplating entering the China market to large corporations with established presence in China. Topics included a review of recent laws and regulations promulgated by the Chinese government that affect protection and enforcement of intellectual property, what the United States government is doing to improve intellectual property protection and enforcement in China, how to best protect business assets to avoid intellectual property problems, how to recognize product infringement, and steps to take if infringement occurs.

Through STOP! and the small business outreach campaign, the USPTO will continue to work with Congress, other government agencies, and the private sector to stunt the growth of global trade in pirated and counterfeit goods that threatens America's innovation economy, the competitiveness of our leading companies and small manufacturers, and the livelihood of their workers.

Under the AIPA of 1999 (Public Law 106-113), the USPTO is directed to advise the President, through the Secretary of Commerce, and all federal agencies on national and international intellectual property policy issues, including intellectual property protection in other nations. The USPTO is also authorized by the AIPA to provide guidance, conduct programs and studies, and otherwise interact with foreign intellectual property offices and international intergovernmental organizations on matters involving the protection of intellectual property.

Through our Offices of International Relations, Enforcement, and Congressional Relations, the USPTO: (1) helps negotiate and works with Congress to implement international intellectual property treaties and develop domestic intellectual property related legislation; (2) provides technical assistance to foreign governments that are looking to develop or improve their intellectual property laws and systems; (3) provides capacity-building training programs to foreign intellectual property officials on intellectual property enforcement; (4) advises the Department of State and USTR on drafting and reviewing of intellectual property sections in bilateral and multilateral investment treaties and trade agreements; (5) advises the USTR and the Department of State on intellectual property issues in the World Trade Organization (WTO); (6) works with USTR, the Department of State, and American industry on the annual review of intellectual property protection and enforcement under the Special 301 provisions of the Trade Act of 1974; and (7) consults with the Department of Justice and other federal law enforcement entities who are responsible for intellectual property enforcement.



*During a seminar in Austin, TX, Deputy Under Secretary Pinkos explains that small business are vulnerable to intellectual property theft because they often lack the knowledge and expertise to effectively combat it.*



## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY TREATIES/AGREEMENTS

In FY 2005, intellectual property activities included:

**Patent Cooperation Treaty Reform:** The USPTO continued to participate in the WIPO's Working Group on Reform of the PCT in an effort to achieve a simpler, cost-effective system. Major treaty reforms, based on a U.S. initiative, became effective on January 1, 2004. The United States led efforts in FY 2003 to revise the PCT search and preliminary examination guidelines, which provide International Authorities with guidance in the handling and processing of applications under the new combined search and examination system. In March 2004, these guidelines went into effect for international applications filed on or after January 1, 2004. The Meeting of the International Authorities mechanism was reconvened in FY 2004 to, among other things, exchange information on the new enhanced international search and preliminary examination system in effect since January 1, 2004. In FY 2005, the USPTO initiated discussions in the Meeting of the International Authorities of pending proposals from the Working Group on Reform of the PCT. As a result of this effort, the PCT Assembly is expected to approve many outstanding reform proposals in FY 2006.

**Standing Committee on the Law of Patents (SCP):** The USPTO participated in WIPO's June 2005 meeting of the SCP in an effort to move forward the discussions on substantive patent law harmonization forward. A proposal, based on a similar proposal introduced at last year's SCP meeting by the Trilateral Offices, USPTO, JPO, and European Patent Office (EPO), to limit the discussions to prior-art related issues was not adopted. In FY 2005, the WIPO General Assembly took up the issue of the future work of the SCP and these discussions will continue through FY 2006.

**WIPO Internet Treaties:** The WIPO Copyright Treaty (WCT) and the WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty (WPPT), commonly known as the WIPO Internet Treaties, are designed to ensure international protection of copyrighted works, performances, and sound recordings in the digital environment. Over the last several years, the USPTO has worked to ensure the ratification and full implementation of the Treaties, which entered into force in FY 2002. Currently, 54 countries are members of the WCT and 53 are members of the WPPT, helping to create a seamless web of protection for copyright works online.

**Standing Committee on the Law of Trademarks, Industrial Designs, and Geographical Indications:** The USPTO continued to promote and actively participate in Trademark Law Treaty (TLT) reform as the primary focus of work by the Standing Committee. The USPTO supports inclusion in the revised TLT of the text of the Joint Recommendation on Trademark Licenses, which sets out maximum requirements for license recordal. Inclusion of the text would limit the negative effects for trademark owners in those countries where recordal of trademark licenses is required to maintain both the trademark registration and the license. Also, the Standing Committee reached consensus that the revised TLT should allow offices to choose the means of transmittal of communications, giving the USPTO the flexibility to move to complete electronic processing for trademarks in the future. The WIPO General Assembly has scheduled a diplomatic conference for March 2006, in which adoption of the revised TLT will be considered.

**Standing Committee on Copyright and Related Rights (SCCRR):** The USPTO continued to participate in the work of the SCCRR to develop its proposal on treaty language for a new WIPO treaty for the Protection of the Rights of Broadcasting, Cablecasting, and Webcasting Organizations. The SCCRR also monitored national developments in the legal protection of databases and reported on related developments in U.S. legislation.

**Free Trade Agreements (FTA):** The USPTO is participating in FTA negotiations with several countries, including Thailand, Andean Countries (Peru, Colombia, and Ecuador), Oman, United Arab Emirates, and the Southern Africa Customs Union, composed of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, and Swaziland. In these negotiations, the USPTO works with USTR and delegations from each country to assure that standards are created which build on the foundation established in the Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights (TRIPs) and other international agreements to protect intellectual property. In addition, the USPTO, in cooperation with USTR, continues to monitor compliance with existing FTAs, such as the Central America FTA and the United States-Morocco FTA.

**WTO/TRIPS:** The USPTO actively participated in U.S. delegations to the WTO's Council for TRIPs of the WTO over the past year. The TRIPs Council continued to review the intellectual property regimes of numerous countries and continued its discussions relating to traditional knowledge, genetic resources, technology transfer, the protection of Geographical Indications (GI), and other issues. With the continuation of the ongoing round of multilateral trade negotiations in the WTO, which was launched at Doha, Qatar in November 2001, the USPTO has remained actively involved in WTO intellectual property issues.

**WIPO Intergovernmental Committee:** The USPTO headed the U.S. delegation to the WIPO Intergovernmental Committee on Intellectual Property and Genetic Resources, Traditional Knowledge, and Folklore. The focus of United States efforts is to encourage developing countries to meet stated concerns about protecting genetic resources, traditional knowledge, and folklore either through current intellectual property regimes or through non-intellectual property laws. Progress has been made in the development of model contractual provisions and traditional knowledge databases. In FY 2005, USPTO worked with the Australian, Canadian, and Japanese Patent Offices to block a proposed negotiation of treaty language on the misappropriation of traditional knowledge and traditional cultural expressions.

**International Science and Technology (S&T) Agreements:** Throughout FY 2005, the USPTO continued working closely with the U.S. Department of State in the negotiation of cooperative S&T agreements with other countries, including provisions of the intellectual property annex to S&T agreements that ensure equitable allocation of rights to intellectual property created in the course of cooperative research.

## ENFORCEMENT

**Technical Assistance and Capacity-Building:** The USPTO enforcement efforts were strengthened by increasing the number of full-time attorney positions dedicated to improving global intellectual property protection to thirteen. The Office of Enforcement participated in FTA negotiations with Panama, Thailand, Andean Community, Oman, United Arab Emirates, and Morocco by providing advice relating to enforcement obligations. Technical assistance was provided in the implementation of the Central America FTA and FTAs with Australia and Morocco. Within the context of WTO accession negotiations, the Office of Enforcement provided policy guidance to USTR. Guidance and recommendations were provided to the USTR under the Special 301 review.

The Office of Enforcement partnered with numerous international and non-governmental organizations in designing and delivering technical assistance programs including the Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN), United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE), International Intellectual Property Institute (IIPI), WIPO, Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation, Secretariat for Central American Integration, Bureau for International Narcotics and Law Enforcement Affairs (INL), and the Middle East Partnership Initiative (MEPI).



*USPTO executives listen intently as officials from other countries present opinions about the current state of substantive patent law harmonization and possible approaches for moving harmonization forward.*



The Office of Enforcement increased technical assistance offered in China, with a focus on providing the provinces with capacity building programs relating to civil, criminal, and border enforcement. Programs in China included: World Customs Organization Regional Forum, Shanghai; Criminal Copyright Enforcement Seminar in Guangzhou; Seminar on new Chinese Judicial Interpretation for Criminal Intellectual Property Infringements; Criminal Copyright Seminar, "How to File a Criminal Case," Beijing; and the Pearl River Delta Seminar on Intellectual Property Enforcement in Southern China.

The Office of Enforcement, in coordination with IPI, provided technical assistance in Russia for border enforcement officials in St. Petersburg and Vladivostok. These programs utilized a case study method involving discussions of problem solving exercises. Additional programs in Europe and Central Asia included: UNECE Intellectual Property Advisory Group consultations with Romania; USPTO Intellectual Property Enforcement Conference in Azerbaijan; and WIPO-UNECE-World Customs Organization Sub-regional Seminar on Enforcement of Intellectual Property Rights in Almaty, Kazakhstan.

In Asia, the Office of Enforcement conducted intellectual property protection and enforcement programs that included: ASEAN-USPTO Workshop on Optical Media Regulation and Enforcement, Bangkok, Thailand; International Association for the Protection of Intellectual Property-Japan IPR Enforcement Symposia on Anti-Counterfeiting, Tokyo and Fukuoka, Japan; US-Vietnam Trade Council Program in Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam; U.S. Consulate-United States Vietnam Trade Council-Association of American Publishers Seminar on Copyright Licensing, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam; Support for Trade Acceleration Program Vietnam-KI Asia-IPI Judicial Education Program on IPR Protection and Enforcement, Hanoi, Vietnam; ASEAN-USPTO Workshop on Effective Practices in Combating Trade in Counterfeit Hard Goods, Bangkok, Thailand; ASEAN-USPTO Seminar on IPR Capacity-Building for Small and Medium-Size Enterprises in Bangkok, Thailand; Combating Internet Piracy, Taipei, Taiwan; and intellectual property protection and enforcement workshops and public awareness seminars in Ulaan Baatar, Mongolia.

Through partnership with MEPI, programs were provided that focused on a variety of enforcement issues including: a workshop in Tunis, Tunisia for judges, prosecutors and Customs officials on best practices for effective IPR enforcement; Middle East regional program on intellectual property rights border enforcement in Amman, Jordan; training for Algerian judges in Algiers, Algeria; training for magistrate students in Algiers, Algeria; Enforcement Academy and United States Study tour for judges from throughout the Middle East in Washington, D.C., New York, Los Angeles, and San Francisco; customs training in Algiers, Algeria; judicial training in Oran, Algeria; and IPR Border Enforcement Program for Moroccan Customs, Rabat, Morocco.



*Attendees of the ASEAN-USDOJ-USPTO "Workshop on Effective Practices in Combating Trade in Counterfeit Hard Goods" held in Bangkok, Thailand.*

Technical assistance programs were offered in Africa, which included: IIPi-West Africa regional conference in Dakar, Senegal, Africa; and Intellectual Property: Policy Priorities to Foster Economic Growth, Public Health and Culture; and Bureau for INL, Department of State/USPTO Program on Combating Counterfeit Medicines in Sub-Saharan Africa, Johannesburg. Enforcement programs were also conducted in Colombo, Sri Lanka and Dhaka, Bangladesh.

Several enforcement programs were conducted in the Washington D.C. area for foreign officials including: USPTO Enforcement Academy; Central America FTA Enforcement Academy; and the USPTO-WIPO Academy for the Judiciary on the Enforcement of Intellectual Property Rights. Training was also provided to U.S. Government officials whose portfolios include intellectual property issues.

## TRILATERAL

**Patent Trilateral Offices:** The USPTO hosted the 22nd Annual Trilateral Conference, continuing the cooperative effort that began in 1983 among the USPTO, the JPO, and the EPO. The focus of the conference was to address workload challenges resulting from growth and complexity of applications.

The three offices recognized that exploiting the prior art search results performed by another office will reduce duplication of efforts and will decrease workloads and enhance patent quality policy in each office. Working toward this objective, Trilateral cooperation focused on establishment of a pilot program for exchange of search history results and continuing study of work-sharing initiatives to look for solutions to allow timely access to search information in the office of first filing in order to provide benefits to the office of second filing.

In support of the work-sharing project, the offices also agreed to provide mutual access to the electronic files of each office in order to enable each office's examiners to access application content, examination search results, priority documents, and other related information among the offices.

Trilateral cooperation also continued discussions on aspects of harmonization including international patent classification reform and substantive patent law harmonization.

**Trademark Trilateral Offices:** The USPTO, together with the JPO and the European Community's OHIM, are continuing work on the Trademark Trilateral Identification Manual Project's list of identifications for goods and services that will be accepted in trademark applications filed in the three offices. Recent efforts of the Trilateral include creating an online forum for Trilateral voting on proposed identifications. The electronic forum for voting will increase the pace at which the offices can propose and consider new identifications for inclusion in the list. This list of accepted identifications streamlines the trademark application process for those filing applications within the United States, Europe, and Japan.

## GEOGRAPHICAL INDICATIONS (GI)

**GIs Website:** The USPTO's Office of International Relations (OIR) created a dedicated webpage on the USPTO website for GI issues, addressing domestic protection as well as the ongoing international GI debate. The webpage features a GI video, produced by OIR in conjunction with the Foreign Agricultural Service (FAS) of the Department of Agriculture, that explains the U.S. system for protecting GIs through the trademark system. FAS overseas posts are using the video to explain the U.S. system for protecting GIs as well as the U.S. position on GIs at the WTO. The video will be used in emerging foreign markets such as Argentina, Brazil, Bolivia, China, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cuba, Ecuador, Egypt, Guatemala, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Nigeria, Pakistan, Paraguay, Peru, Sri Lanka, Thailand, and Venezuela.





*Mark Cohen, USPTO's IP attaché assigned to the U.S. Embassy in Beijing, speaks on the Chinese Supreme People's Court's judicial interpretation on "Handling Criminal Cases of Infringing Intellectual Property."*

**WTO GI Issues:** The USPTO actively works on GI issues in the WTO TRIPs Council. Negotiations continue on establishing a multilateral system of notification and registration of GIs wines and spirits. The USPTO and other United States government agencies do not support establishing a multilateral system that treats GIs differently from trademarks and undermines the existing protection for trademark rights. Discussions also continue regarding extension of higher-level protection to products other than wine and spirits. The United States opposes amending the TRIPs Agreement to change the level of protection for all GI products, as there has not been any demonstration that existing protection is inadequate. Also, the topic of GIs continues to be included in the modalities on the WTO Agriculture negotiations where generic terms (i.e., parmesan, feta, chablis) would be considered intellectual property of a particular region. The USPTO continues to work on an inter-agency basis to ensure that the domestic and export interests of our trademark holders are not damaged.

## CHINA INITIATIVES

**Technical Assistance:** The USPTO increased technical assistance offered in China, with a focus on providing the provinces with capacity building programs relating to civil, criminal, and border enforcement. Programs in China included: World Customs Organization Regional Forum, Shanghai; Criminal Copyright Enforcement Seminar in

Guangzhou; Seminar on new Chinese Judicial Interpretation for Criminal Intellectual Property Infringements at the USPTO headquarters in Alexandria, VA; Criminal Copyright Seminar, "How To File a Criminal Case", Beijing; and the Pearl River Delta Seminar on Intellectual Property Enforcement in Southern China.



*Under Secretary Jon Dudas meets with senior-level copyright lawmakers from China during a conference hosted by the USPTO on "Internet Copyright Issues in China and the United States: Implementing the WIPO Copyright Treaty and the WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty."*

**Diplomatic Initiatives:** In January 2005, Under Secretary Dudas visited Beijing and met with his counterparts from various intellectual property agencies, including the State Intellectual Property Office (SIPO), the Chinese Trademark Office, the National Copyright Administration, and the Supreme People's Court. Under Secretary Dudas also rolled out a Work Plan for Technical Assistance and Cooperative Exchanges. The work plan is divided into several broad topics including general rule of law, patents and data exclusivity, trademarks and GIs, copyrights, and enforcement. Each broad topic is further divided into discrete items that represent areas of specific concern for U.S. rights holders. The USPTO is currently in the process of implementing this work plan.

**Training:** The USPTO hosted visiting delegations from China, both from Beijing and from the provinces. The visitors included Chinese judges who wanted to learn about our legal system and the administrative procedures followed by the USPTO. The visitors also included officials from SIPO interested in learning about our patent examination processes for several emerging technologies.

Several enforcement programs were conducted in the Washington, D.C. area for the Chinese, including the USPTO Enforcement Academy. The Enforcement Academy is designed to train foreign judges, enforcement officials and program administrators on international intellectual property obligations under WTO/TRIPs, as well as how to establish and maintain a system of intellectual property protections. Chinese officials also attended the USPTO's Visiting Scholars Program during the fiscal year. Plans are currently underway to expand such training to more than double the size of our existing programs.

**Diplomatic Negotiations:** A delegation from the DOC will visit China in November 2005 to take part in the Ambassador's Roundtable on IPR in China as well as the U.S.-China JCCT IPR working group in Beijing.

**Expert Posting:** USPTO and DOC's U.S. and Foreign Commercial Service (USFCS) are working together to place intellectual property experts in Guangzhou and Shanghai. The new team of experts, who will be deployed in FY 2006, will provide in-country assistance to U.S. businesses facing intellectual property problems, and work with local officials on efforts to curb piracy. This will supplement our intellectual property experts team already in Beijing since FY 2004.

## CONGRESSIONAL ACTIVITY

During FY 2005, Under Secretary Dudas, Deputy Under Secretary Pinkos, and the USPTO's Offices of International Relations, Enforcement, and Congressional Relations participated in various meetings, hearings, and briefings with Members of Congress and staff relating to patent, trademark, and copyright issues including patent reform and intellectual property protection and enforcement both in the United States and abroad. In addition, the USPTO was host to several congressional delegations during FY 2005 at its new USPTO Alexandria facilities.

**Testimony:** Under Secretary Dudas testified on the "Patent System: Today and Tomorrow" at a hearing before the Senate Judiciary Subcommittee on Intellectual Property and at an oversight hearing on patent reform held by the House Judiciary Subcommittee on Courts, the Internet, and Intellectual Property on a "Committee Print Regarding Patent Quality Improvement." In addition, Under Secretary Dudas provided testimony on international IPR issues relating to China at a



*Under Secretary Dudas testifies before the U.S. House of Representatives, Subcommittee on Courts, the Internet, and Intellectual Property.*



hearing entitled "Issues before the U.S.-China Joint Commission on Commerce and Trade" before the House Energy and Commerce Committee's Subcommittee on Commerce, Trade, and Consumer Protection. The Under Secretary also testified before the Senate Committee on Homeland Security and Governmental Affairs, Subcommittee on Oversight of Government Management, the Federal Workforce, and the District of Columbia on the U.S. Government's comprehensive initiative established to stop trade in pirated and counterfeit goods at a hearing entitled "Finding and Fighting Fakes: Reviewing the Strategy Targeting Organized Piracy." Finally, Under Secretary Dudas testified before the House Judiciary Subcommittee on Courts, the Internet, and Intellectual Property on a "Review of U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Operations, including Analysis of General Accounting Office, Inspector General, and National Academy of Public Administration Reports."

Deputy Under Secretary Pinkos provided testimony to the Senate Judiciary Subcommittee on Intellectual Property on "Piracy of Intellectual Property." Deputy Under Secretary Pinkos also testified at a joint hearing of the Small Business Committee's Subcommittee on Rural Enterprises, Agriculture, and Technology and Subcommittee on Tax, Finance and Exports on the U.S. trade relationship with China at a hearing entitled "Does China Enact Barriers to Fair Trade?"

**Patent Reform:** H.R. 2795, the "Patent Reform Act of 2005," was introduced in the House on June 8, 2005. The bill contains various initiatives intended to address patent quality, limitation of litigation abuses, and harmonization of United States patent laws with those of our key trading partners. Some of the major proposals include a shift from a first-to-invent system to a first-inventor-to-file, a limitation on treble damages for patent infringement, establishment of a post-grant opposition proceeding at the USPTO, expansion of the *inter partes* reexamination proceeding, allowance of assignee filing, the publication of all patent applications after eighteen months, elimination of the best mode requirement, and broadening of the scope of prior user rights. Consideration of the bill will continue in FY 2006.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY POLICY DEVELOPMENTS AND DOMESTIC LITIGATION

Under United States Code (U.S.C.) § 2, the Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the USPTO advises the President and other agencies on intellectual property policy, both domestic and international. For example, in domestic litigation, in addition to defending cases in which the USPTO is sued for decisions it has rendered, the USPTO advises the Solicitor General of the United States on intellectual property matters before the Supreme Court. In FY 2005, the USPTO assisted the Solicitor General in formulating the government's position before the Supreme Court in several important intellectual property cases. For example, the USPTO assisted the Solicitor General's Office with the Government's brief in *Metro-Goldwyn Mayer Studios v. Grokster*, U.S., 125 S.Ct. 2764 (2005). In keeping with the government's recommendation, the Supreme Court held that one who distributes file-sharing software designed for use in copyright infringement by third parties is liable for any resulting acts of infringement by those parties. The USPTO also assisted the Solicitor General's Office with the government's brief in *Merck KGAA v. Integra Life Sciences I, Ltd., et al.*, U.S., 125 S.Ct. 2372 (2005). In *Merck*, the Supreme Court held that the safe harbor provisions of 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(1), which exempt from patent infringement the use of a patented invention "solely for uses reasonably related to the development and submission of information" to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), extend to experiments using patented drugs for developing new drugs which will be the subject of an FDA submission, not just to clinical trials related to an FDA submission.

In addition to the USPTO's *amicus curiae* work before the Supreme Court, the Court of Appeals for the federal Circuit specifically invited the USPTO to participate as an *amicus curiae* in an *en banc* case involving critical patent policy issues. In *Phillips v. AWH Corp.*, 415 F.3d 1303 (Fed. Cir. 2005), the Federal Circuit asked the USPTO to brief the proper role of technical dictionaries and the patent specification when construing patent claims, which is a core issue in both patent application prosecution and patent infringement litigation. In keeping with the USPTO's *amicus curiae* brief, the Federal Circuit reaffirmed the principle that the specification is the best guide to the meaning of a disputed patent claim term, and rejected an approach to claim construction that gives primacy to dictionaries over the specification.





The Solicitor's Office also appeared as a party in several other important patent cases before the Federal Circuit. For example, in *In re Fisher*, F.3d (Fed. Cir. 2005), the Federal Circuit considered for the first time whether the requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 101 that a patented invention must be "useful" is satisfied by an allegation that patent claims to a nucleic acid compound have utility as a research tool even where there is no known practical significance to any result from a test using the claimed nucleic acids. The Court ruled that the USPTO correctly applied the Supreme Court's patent utility standard to genetic materials, and expressly approved the USPTO's "Utility Examination Guidelines." The USPTO's position was supported by *amicus curiae* briefs from the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, professional associations, and the National Academy of Sciences. The USPTO also appeared as a party in *In re Rath*, 402 F.3d 1207 (Fed. Cir. 2005). *Rath* is a trademark case in which the Federal Circuit considered whether the statutory prohibition against registering surnames that have not acquired distinctiveness conflicts with the U.S.' obligations under the Paris Convention. The Court affirmed the USPTO's TTAB's refusal to register two proposed marks as primarily merely surnames, and that the Paris Convention is not "self executing" and thus cannot override the statutory prohibition.



*International judges attend the USPTO - WIPO Academy for the Judiciary.*

## REGISTRATION

### ***Office of Enrollment and Discipline***

The Office of Enrollment and Discipline (OED) had a very successful FY 2005. OED fully implemented computerized testing of applicants for registration to practice in patent cases before the USPTO. Several important advantages of computerized testing that were expected have been realized. These include: steady-state, non-cyclical workflow in processing applications and preparing examination questions; and greater convenience for applicants scheduling examinations. Turnaround time for processing applications and examination results has been reduced. Applicants who take the examination via computer obtain their results on the day of the examination. In FY 2005, OED processed 3,025 applications concerning the registration examination. OED admitted 2,669 applicants who took the computerized registration examination and 32 applicants who took the examination in a paper format. OED registered 941 individuals as agents and 501 individuals as attorneys. OED issued 146 limited recognition numbers to non-citizens of the United States. During the course of the year, OED also supported USPTO's Patents organization, with emphasis on assuring quality patent examination, by successfully administering promotion examinations for patent examiners and patent manager candidates. In FY 2005, OED continued to effectively protect members of the public. Upon OED's review of the applications for registration that were received, OED determined that in 46 applications, the issue of an applicant's present moral character was raised. Six applicants were not registered because of negative moral character decisions by the OED Director. One applicant withdrew the application after the OED Director issued a Show Cause requirement. OED either dismissed or closed the investigations regarding 34 candidates and proceeded with their registration. During the course of the year, OED received 113 grievances concerning possible misconduct by registered practitioners. OED opened 51 investigations. Twenty-five grievances were dismissed, after thorough review and analysis, without investigation. OED closed 61 pending investigations through a combination of warning letters, memorandums for the Committee on Discipline, and closure for lack of probable cause to determine that a USPTO Disciplinary Rule had been violated.

## MANAGEMENT CHALLENGES

***Shift in Complexity of Filings / Sustained Emphasis on Quality*** — The USPTO must address the challenges of rising workloads, the shift of applications from traditional arts to more complex technologies, and the reality that any limitations and delays in implementing the *21st Century Strategic Plan* initiatives will delay some of the quality improvements and many efficiency gains projected in the *Strategic Plan*. Technology has become increasingly complex, and responding to demands from the public for higher quality products and services continues to be a priority.

***Electronic Workplace*** — The Patent and Trademark operations are rapidly moving to eliminate paper documents from their processes. As the reliance on paper disappears from internal processes, the costs for handling applications and related materials will be substantially reduced. Electronic communications will be improved, encouraging more applicants to do business electronically with the delivery of web-based text and image systems. Both Patent and Trademark organizations have made significant progress in support of the long-term goal to create an e-government operation, and the Trademark organization now relies exclusively on trademark data submitted or captured electronically to support examination, publish documents, and issue registrations. However, this increased reliance on electronic systems presents challenges in storage and maintenance for data recovery in the event of outage. Keeping systems robust and adaptable to continuous improvement is imperative.

***Strengthening IPR System*** — An effective IPR system is important to trade because it provides confidence to businesses that rights will be respected and that profits will be returned to IPR holders. The tremendous ingenuity of American inventors, coupled with a strong intellectual property system, encourages and rewards innovation and helps propel the economic and technological growth of our nation. Our challenges include deepening the dialogue on global intellectual property policy, facilitating technical cooperation with foreign countries, surveying and exchanging information on the current status of IPR protection and administrative systems, and arriving at agreement on standards of enhanced intellectual property enforcement to include increased criminal and civil protection, as well as tighter controls on circumventing technological protection.

***Human Capital Strategy Improvements attract and retain talent and build an exceptional employee base*** — The USPTO knows that a talented human resource base can be a competitive advantage in any economic environment. However, building this base is a challenge when faced with ever changing market requirements, increased employee demands, and competition for talent. Therefore, the human capital strategy must include elements that anticipate resource requirements and establishes a long-term approach to securing them. This includes a brand in the labor marketplace and investing in talent, a valuable corporate asset, as well as providing for varied motivational factors. The long-term approach must also attempt to integrate systems to monitor the needs of employees and ensure that human capital policies continue to reflect employee goals linked to corporate strategy.

***Long-Term Funding Stability*** — Adequate funding is important for helping the USPTO accomplish its mission of evaluating patent and trademark applications in a timely and quality manner. Long-term funding stability, will create a predictable environment for planning purposes.



## THE PRESIDENT'S MANAGEMENT AGENDA

### **Strategic Management of Human Capital –**

The USPTO's *21st Century Strategic Plan*, together with the USPTO Strategic Workforce/Restructuring Plan, lay out an explicit workforce planning strategy that is linked to the Agency's strategic and program planning efforts. The Agency has projected its current and future human capital needs, including the size of the workforce and its deployment across the organization; and has identified key competencies needed to fulfill the agency's mission and strategic goals. The *21st Century Strategic Plan* and the USPTO Strategic Workforce/Restructuring Plan demonstrate that the USPTO is focused on building competencies in response to customer demands for enhanced quality. We have continued both the primary patent examiner recertification program and the testing of junior examiners to ensure that patent examiners have the requisite knowledge and

skills to be promoted to the GS-13 level and to be granted certification of legal competency. The Agency is leveraging competitive sourcing and e-government to better manage time devoted to examination of patent and trademark applications.

The USPTO has become a recognized leader in federal government telework programs, and has received numerous awards for its accomplishments in this regard. The Office was the recipient of the 2003 Mid-Atlantic Telecommuting Advisory Council's Best Company/Organization for Teleworkers Award because of its leadership in telework policy, and active promotion of telework programs. In FY 2005, the Patent organization launched a patent hoteling program pilot providing participants the ability to work at home fully supported with complete access to online USPTO-provided resources in conducting their assigned duties. The pilot program incorporates the concept of "hoteling" where telecommuting participants reserve time in designated shared "hotel" offices at the Alexandria campus to conduct activities such as personal interviews with applicants, and attending meetings or training classes. Pilot participants received special training to enable them to work as effectively at home as in the office. Feedback from participants and reviews of the technologies used in the pilot will be used to finalize designs for a vastly expanded Telework program that could potentially allow virtually any USPTO employee to participate.

The *21st Century Strategic Plan* also views workforce planning from an international perspective, and incorporates how work sharing can have an impact on USPTO's human capital planning and management. In addition, the USPTO's current organizational structure supports decision-making at the lowest appropriate level.

**Competitive Sourcing** – During FY 2005, the USPTO, in support of the President's Management Agenda, continued to competitively source those activities that have been identified as commercial in nature. The USPTO's *21st Century Strategic Plan*, with the goal of increasing quality and productivity and decreasing pendency, identified new approaches for performing work that is currently accomplished by federal employees. The USPTO is currently in the process of and plans to successfully compete the implementation of competitive sourcing activities, to include a pilot of prior art searches in PCT applications, and classification of patent documents.



*Under Secretary Dudas reviews enterprise goals with executive level managers during an executive retreat.*

**Improved Financial Performance** — Again, in FY 2005, the USPTO is in compliance with all federal accounting principles and standards and has encountered no instances of material weaknesses in internal controls or non-compliance with financial related laws and regulations. We will continue to maintain and strengthen our internal controls and improve the timeliness and usefulness of our financial management information. In fact, for FY 2005, the USPTO met all quarterly financial reporting requirements instituted by the OMB. Again, the USPTO sustained its clean audit opinion, with FY 2005 marking the 13th consecutive unqualified audit opinion and the ninth consecutive year with no material weaknesses. The USPTO has a certified and accredited, fully integrated financial management system and uses a data warehouse to accommodate both financial and operational data. The data warehouse is used by managers for analyzing financial results and performance and by supervisory patent examiners for managing patent processing timeframes. The USPTO also operates a mature ABC system that captures costs of core mission activities and both direct and indirect costs for the entire USPTO. Managers use data from the ABC system to analyze the cost of operations when making decisions regarding improving processes, setting fees, or developing budget requirements.

**E-Government** — The USPTO chooses IT projects that best support its mission and comply with its enterprise architecture. Individual projects are evaluated in the broader context of technical alignment with other IT systems, as well as the investment's impact to the USPTO IT portfolio's performance, as measured by cost, benefit, and risk. As part of the Capital Planning and Investment Control process, the USPTO prioritizes each investment and decides which projects will be funded in subsequent fiscal years. Once selected, each project is managed and monitored consistently throughout its life cycle. At key milestone dates, progress reviews are conducted to compare the project's status to planned benefit, cost, schedule technical efficiency, and effectiveness measures. All major IT system investments are included in FY 2005 Exhibit 53 and Exhibit 300 business cases.

The USPTO is accelerating deployment of critical automated information systems, particularly the electronic end-to-end processing of patent and trademark applications. Deployment of the patent IFW system was successfully completed in FY 2004, facilitating the electronic processing and management of Patent application files. Electronic capture of all pending paper applications was completed in FY 2005, enabling the electronic management of 96.7 percent of applications undergoing examination and the designation of the electronic file as the official file. The USPTO Capital Planning and Investment Control Process (CPIC) governance process describes how and by whom transformation will be implemented within the agency. Among other things, the CPIC is a management vehicle designed to ensure execution, guidance, and oversight for capital programming and capital asset plans to achieve business transformation and compliance activities, and describes the guidance and management processes that support program management, execution and oversight.

The Supplemental Complex Repository for Examiners (SCORE), which was deployed in FY 2005, represents another component in electronic end-to-end processing. SCORE is a data repository system designed to augment IFW with the capture and retrieval of non-standard application content such as drawings, chemical files, and DNA sequence files. Examiners are provided immediate access to this data and the system includes features that provide efficient means of reviewing the information, such as a "find" feature to detect peptide strings with a within sequence ID's. The Automatic Routing Tool was launched to assist in directing newly captured applications to the appropriate Technology Center. Additionally, EFS underwent major reengineering to a web-based architecture.

Activities aimed at providing the public with improved access to government includes the implementation of the PAIR in FY 2004. For the first time, anyone with Internet access could use the USPTO's website to track the status of a public patent application as it moved from pre-grant publication to final disposition, and to review documents in the official application file. The system offered the public an advanced electronic portal for PDF viewing, downloading and printing an array of information and documents for patent applications. In FY 2005, the Patent organization began development of Private PAIR to provide applicants with secure private access to their unpublished application documents via the Internet as soon as the application is internally processed. Significant upgrades were made to eDAN to provide added user functionality and enhanced interface with other systems such as PALM, Private PAIR, and Public PAIR.



The USPTO has established additional options for filing a trademark application, consistent with the *21st Century Strategic Plan*. By offering financial and market-based incentives, Trademark owners can now select the option that best meets their needs – with higher fees for filing on paper, and lower fees for filing and processing electronically. Changes in the fee structure and system improvements have led to an increase in the number of trademark applications that are filed through the award winning TEAS. More than 85 percent of applications for registration are now submitted electronically, making it easier than ever to file for federal trademark registration. Electronic communications also make it possible to conduct a preliminary search prior to filing an application, determine the status of pending and registered trademarks, respond to office actions, access general information on marks published, registered and renewed, file initial applications and maintain a registered mark through the USPTO website. The USPTO has continued to enhance this system and expand the number and type of transactions that can be completed on-line. Twenty-six TEAS forms are available and provide the means to handle most trademark transactions electronically.

**Budget and Performance Integration** – Since FY 1999, the USPTO has developed an annual corporate plan that links the annual performance plan and budget request, so that resource requirements for continuing programs and new initiatives are aligned with outputs and performance goals. In June 2002, the USPTO introduced the *21st Century Strategic Plan* and an updated version of the plan in February 2003, in order to address issues raised by intellectual property stakeholders. The *21st Century Strategic Plan* is a five-year plan that identifies critical tasks designed to provide the USPTO and external stakeholders with a long-term vision of agency goals, potential funding levels, and planned outcomes. The USPTO has refined its budget formulation process to better equate budgetary resources with both enterprise-wide strategic goals and individual unit performance targets. The annual integrated budget/performance plan is an effective and efficient way of establishing accountability of resources against performance. The agency routinely monitors program performance targets to ensure achievement of performance goals. Performance goals are evaluated regularly against stakeholder requirements, business conditions, and planned and actual resources available. Organizational goals and crosscutting performance measures are also included in senior executive members' performance appraisal plans to ensure alignment with agency mission, goals, and strategic plan objectives.



*The "Wave Wall" of the new USPTO Museum located in the Madison Building.*

## MANAGEMENT CONTROLS AND COMPLIANCE

### WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS

**T**his section provides information on the USPTO's compliance with the following legislative mandates:

- Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act
- Federal Information Security Management Act
- Inspector General (IG) Act Amendments
- Federal Financial Management Improvement Act (FFMIA)
- OMB Financial Management Indicators
- Prompt Payment Act
- Civil Monetary Penalty Act
- Debt Collection Improvement Act
- Biennial Review of Fees
- Improper Payments Information Act of 2002

#### FEDERAL MANAGERS' FINANCIAL INTEGRITY ACT

The FMFIA requires federal agencies to provide an annual statement of assurance regarding management controls and financial systems. The statement of assurance is provided in the Director's opening letter at the front of this Performance and Accountability report. This statement was based on the review and consideration of a wide variety of evaluations, control assessments, internal analyses, reconciliations, reports, and other information, including the Department of Commerce OIG audits, and the independent public accountants' opinion on the USPTO's financial statements and their reports on internal control and compliance with laws and regulations. In addition, USPTO is not identified on the Government Accountability Office's (GAO) High Risk List related to controls governing various areas.

#### FEDERAL INFORMATION SECURITY MANAGEMENT ACT

The USPTO continues to stay vigilant in ensuring that there are no material weaknesses in administrative controls over information systems and is always seeking methods of improving our secure configuration. With all mission and business systems fully certified and accredited, the USPTO systems have maintained full authority to operate since September 2004.

## INSPECTOR GENERAL ACT AMENDMENTS

The Inspector General Act, as amended, requires semi-annual reporting on IG audits and related activities, as well as any requisite agency follow-up. The report is required to provide information on the overall progress on audit follow-up and internal management controls, statistics on audit reports with disallowed costs, and statistics on audit reports with funds put to better use. The USPTO did not have audit reports with disallowed costs or funds put to better use.

The USPTO's follow-up actions on audit findings and recommendations are essential to improving the effectiveness and efficiency of our programs and operations. As of September 30, 2005, while actions were being taken to address the findings, management had two recommendations outstanding on reports issued in FY 2004. Also, action was taken to close three recommendations contained in the audit reports issued in FY 2004 and prior. No new reports had been issued during FY 2005. A summary of audit findings and recommendations follows.

STATUS OF IG ACT AMENDMENTS AUDIT RECOMMENDATIONS <i>as of September 30, 2005</i>				
Report for Fiscal Year	Status	Recommendation	Action Plan	Completion Date <sup>1</sup>
FY 2001	Closed	Coordinate training in international intellectual property law enforcement and provide clarification of the Council's role to the other agencies involved.	Additional staff was hired in May 2005 for enforcement activities.	May 2005
FY 2004	Open	Ensure that the USPTO works with Commerce and the Office of Personnel Management (OPM) to officially obtain delegated examining authority.	The USPTO has coordinated with OPM to grant us formal delegated examining authority status. The final decision is pending our corrections for staffing violations identified in the OPM audit of our existing delegated examining unit.	Estimated March 2006
FY 2004	Open	Ensure that the USPTO develops Office of Human Resources (OHR) organizational descriptions, policies, and procedures, in accordance with the intent of DDO 10-14.	The USPTO is now in the process of updating all our OHR policies, operating procedures, and processes. We have also developed the OHR Policy Document Control system to track and maintain our policies and procedures.	Estimated February 2006
FY 2004	Closed	Ensure that the OHR staff using the automated staffing system comply with federal personnel regulations and the Veterans' Employment Opportunities Act of 1998.	The OHR put measures in place to ensure that our staff is trained on the automated staffing system and that appropriate safeguards are in place to ensure that we are in compliance with all legal and regulatory requirements.	September 2005
FY 2004	Closed	Ensure that the OHR staff possess the expertise and receive the training necessary to accomplish their assigned duties.	The OHR enacted a framework that will ensure that all staff members receive the necessary training to accomplish their assigned duties, to include counseling employees on strengths and weaknesses, developing an Individual Development Plan for each employee that will set forth how skill gaps will be filled, and providing both in-house and third-party training opportunities to address skill gaps.	May 2005
<sup>1</sup> For the Delegated Examining Authority: The date of completion was revised to allow time to make corrections in response to a recent OPM audit. For the Organizational Policies: The Office of Human Resources is currently revamping, getting approval and implementing all 55 of its agency administrative orders, policies, and standard operating procedures. To complete this, the anticipated completion time was adjusted from last year.				

## FEDERAL FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT IMPROVEMENT ACT

The FFMIA requires federal agencies to report on agency substantial compliance with federal financial management system requirements, federal accounting standards, and the U.S. Government Standard General Ledger. The USPTO complied substantially with the FFMIA for FY 2005.



## OMB FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT INDICATORS

The OMB prescribes the use of quantitative indicators to monitor improvements in financial management. The USPTO tracks other financial performance measures as well. The table below shows the USPTO's performance during FY 2005 against performance targets established internally, by OMB, and the government-wide Metric Tracking System (MTS):

Financial Performance Measure	FY 2005 Target	FY 2005 Performance
Percentage of Timely Vendor Payments (MTS)	98%	99%
Percentage of Payroll by Electronic Transfer (OMB)	90%	99%
Percentage of Treasury Agency Locations Fully Reconciled (OMB)	95%	100%
Timely Reports to Central Agencies (OMB)	95%	100%
Audit Opinion on FY 2005 Financial Statements (OMB)	Unqualified	Unqualified
Material Weaknesses Reported by OIG (OMB)	None	None
Timely Posting of Inter-Agency Charges (USPTO)	30 days	21 days
Average Processing Time for Travel Payments (USPTO)	8 days	7 days

## PROMPT PAYMENT ACT

The Prompt Payment Act requires federal agencies to report on their efforts to make timely payments to vendors, including interest penalties for late payments. In FY 2005, the USPTO did not pay interest penalties on 98.7 percent of the 8,045 vendor invoices processed, representing payments of approximately \$459.6 million. Of the 186 invoices that were not processed in a timely manner, the USPTO was required to pay interest penalties on 109 invoices, and was not required to pay interest penalties on 77 invoices, where the interest was calculated at less than \$1. The USPTO paid only \$15 in interest penalties for every million dollars disbursed in FY 2005. Virtually all recurring payments were processed by EFT in accordance with the EFT provisions of the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996.

## CIVIL MONETARY PENALTY ACT

There were no Civil Monetary Penalties assessed by the USPTO during FY 2005.

## DEBT COLLECTION IMPROVEMENT ACT

The Debt Collection Improvement Act prescribes standards for the administrative collection, compromise, suspension, and termination of federal agency collection actions, and referral to the proper agency for litigation. Although the Act has no material effect on the USPTO since it operates with minimal delinquent debt, all debt more than 180 days old has been transferred to the U.S. Department of the Treasury for cross-servicing.



## BIENNIAL REVIEW OF FEES

The Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 requires a biennial review of agency fees, rents, and other charges imposed for services and things of value the USPTO provides to specific beneficiaries as opposed to the American public in general. The objective of the review is to identify such activities and to begin charging fees, where permitted by law, and to periodically adjust existing fees to reflect current costs or market value so as to minimize general taxpayer subsidy of specialized services or things of value (such as rights or privileges) provided directly to identifiable non-Federal beneficiaries. The USPTO is a fully fee-funded agency without subsidy of general taxpayer revenue. For non-legislative fees, it uses ABC accounting to evaluate the costs of activities and determine if fees are set appropriately. When necessary, fees are adjusted to be consistent with the program and with the legislative requirement to recover full cost of the goods or services provided to the public.

## IMPROPER PAYMENTS INFORMATION ACT OF 2002

During FY 2005, the USPTO did not have any erroneous payments that exceeded the ten million dollar threshold. The USPTO identifies, analyzes, and compiles information regarding improper payments to determine when and if systemic and/or managerial issues exist that may require corrective actions on the part of the USPTO management. The USPTO identifies actual improper payments, overpayments and erroneous payments, by reviewing (1) credit memos and refund checks issued by vendors or customers and (2) undelivered electronic payments returned by financial institutions.

While our erroneous payments were only 0.18 percent of total disbursements and primarily related to inaccurate banking information, we plan to further reduce this percentage through our use of the government-wide Central Contractor Registration (CCR) database. The CCR database is maintained by the Department of Defense and requires all government contractors to maintain current contact and banking information. Implementation of an automated interface with the CCR database is planned for FY 2006.

Significant challenges encountered during FY 2005 included not only the lack of an automated interface with the CCR database, which requires the continued application of manual procedures for banking data verification, but also vendors failure to maintain current and accurate banking data within the CCR database.

Improper Payment Reduction Outlook (Dollars in millions)									
Program	FY 2004 Outlays	FY 2004 Improper Payment Percent	FY 2004 Improper Payment Dollars	FY 2005 Outlays	FY 2005 Improper Payment Percent	FY 2005 Improper Payment Dollars	FY 2006 Improper Payment Percent	FY 2007 Improper Payment Percent	FY 2008 Improper Payment Percent
Patent	\$ 1,109	0.03%	\$ 0.42	\$ 1,247	0.18%	\$ 2.21	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Trademark	137	0.01%	0.05	155	0.19%	0.30	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Total	\$ 1,246	0.04%	\$ 0.47	\$ 1,402	0.18%	\$ 2.51	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

Summary of Recovery Audit Effort (Dollars in millions)	
Amount subject to review # of invoices	\$ 159.4 4,433
Actual amount reviewed # of invoices	\$ 107.3 985
Remaining amount to review # of invoices	\$ 24.7 86

During FY 2005, the USPTO entered into an agreement with the DOC to use an existing contract for recovery audit services. The audit was limited to closed obligations greater than \$0.1 million. Further excluded were grants, travel payments, purchase card transactions, inter-agency agreements, government bills of lading, and gift and bequest transactions, leaving simplified acquisitions available to audit.

The audit, to date, has resulted in two invoices that have been identified as potentially recoverable improper payments, which are insignificant. Confirmation with the vendors is in progress. No amounts were recovered as of the end of FY 2005.

## FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

The USPTO is a self-sufficient federal agency that funds the cost of its operations through product and service fees paid by its customers – applicants for and owners of patents and trademarks. Over 84 percent of Patent and Trademark fees collected are set by statute. The USPTO uses ABC techniques to report costs incurred for operations. This information is used to establish non-statutory fees for products and services at an amount that recovers full costs. The ABC data is also one of many factors considered when determining statutory fee amounts.

The following presents the USPTO's FY 2005 financial highlights with regard to budgetary resources and requirements, along with results of operations. Details behind these highlights are included in the discussion of the USPTO's financial statements beginning on page 60.

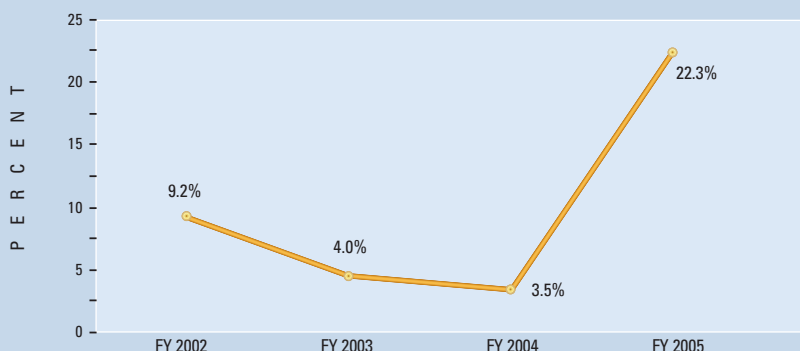
### BUDGETARY RESOURCES AND REQUIREMENTS

The USPTO was provided appropriation authority to spend all planned fee collections in FY 2005. In the past, the appropriation authority was less than fee collections. When spending authority is less than fee collections, the additional fee collections are temporarily unavailable.

The following table presents the source of funds made available to the USPTO, and the use of such funds.

Source and Status of Funds ( <i>Dollars in Millions</i> )	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
<b>Source of Funds:</b>				
Unobligated Beginning Balance	\$ 11.0	\$ 5.6	\$ 3.5	\$ 2.3
Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections	1,151.8	1,194.7	1,321.7	1,504.2
Recovery of Prior Year Obligations	10.1	5.9	10.4	7.6
Net Increase in Unavailable Fees	(23.3)	(11.7)	(99.9)	—
Total Source of Funds	<u>\$ 1,149.6</u>	<u>\$ 1,194.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,235.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,514.1</u>
<b>Status of Funds:</b>				
Obligations Incurred	\$ 1,144.0	\$ 1,191.0	\$ 1,233.4	\$ 1,508.4
Unobligated Balance, Available	2.6	2.0	1.8	2.7
Unobligated Balance, Unavailable	3.0	1.5	0.5	3.0
Total Status of Funds	<u>\$ 1,149.6</u>	<u>\$ 1,194.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,235.7</u>	<u>\$ 1,514.1</u>

### ANNUAL GROWTH IN BUDGETARY RESOURCES



During FY 2005, total budgetary resources available for spending increased 22.3 percent over the amount available in the preceding year. This significant increase in budgetary resources available for use is depicted by the graph to the left.

In FY 2005, USPTO's fee modernization bill was enacted which increased and changed its fee structure. This allowed greater flexibility and placed the USPTO in a better position to realize the goals of the *21st Century Strategic Plan*, including transitioning to a fully electronic operating environment, improving the quality of its services and products, and reducing patent and trademark pendency. Further, the additional funding has enabled the USPTO to increase the number of patent and trademark examiners to assist in addressing the growing average complexity of patent applications and increasing workloads and to allocate additional resources towards protecting intellectual property in the U.S. and abroad.

Plan, including transitioning to a fully electronic operating environment, improving the quality of its services and products, and reducing patent and trademark pendency. Further, the additional funding has enabled the USPTO to increase the number of patent and trademark examiners to assist in addressing the growing average complexity of patent applications and increasing workloads and to allocate additional resources towards protecting intellectual property in the U.S. and abroad.

## RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The USPTO incurred a net cost of \$51.2 million in FY 2005, a decrease of \$48.4 million, or 48.6 percent, from the net cost in FY 2002 of \$99.6 million.

Typically, the USPTO gross cost of operations for a fiscal year exceeds the total obligations incurred in that same fiscal year. This is due to including the costs of non-budgetary items, such as depreciation expense and imputed costs. However, in FY 2005, the gross cost of operations was less than obligations incurred. This difference is partly due to a change in the method to recognize the cost of post-employment benefits. In past years, the USPTO recognized an imputed financing source and corresponding expense to represent its share of the cost to the federal government of providing pension and post-retirement health and life insurance benefits to all eligible USPTO employees. This year, the USPTO is now using fees to fund the cost of post-retirement benefits, resulting in increased obligations. Another contributing factor is the focus on our primary goal of issuing high quality patents, which temporarily decreased the number of patents issued. This reduced the requirement for printing costs that were planned for and obligated in FY 2005.

Due to the increase in pendency, the time it takes to process a patent or trademark, the USPTO has been recognizing a steadily increasing deferred revenue liability for fees received prior to the revenue being earned. From FY 2002 through FY 2005, unearned patent fees increased 48.1 percent, with a 24.6 percent increase from FY 2004. In FY 2005, for each month of patent pendency to first action, deferred revenue for patents increased approximately \$5.7 million per pendency month, with a corresponding decrease in earned revenue. From FY 2002 through FY 2005, unearned trademark fees increased \$43.0 million, primarily due to an improvement in the methodology used to calculate trademark deferred revenue, which was implemented in FY 2004. The USPTO has an aggressive goal of hiring 1,000 new employees each fiscal year through FY 2011, as well as implementing new operating practices to reduce the backlog of unprocessed applications and reduce pendency.

## FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The USPTO received an unqualified ("clean") audit opinion from the independent public accounting firm of KPMG LLP on its FY 2005 financial statements, provided on pages 71 to 94. This is the 13th consecutive year that the USPTO received a "clean" opinion. Our unqualified audit opinions provides independent assurance to the public that the information presented in the USPTO financial statements is fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S. In addition, KPMG LLP reported no material weaknesses or reportable conditions in the USPTO's internal control, and no instances of non-compliance with laws and regulations affecting the financial statements.

The USPTO financial management process ensures that management decision-making information is dependable, internal controls over financial reporting are effective, and that compliance with laws and regulations is maintained. The preparation of these financial statements is a component of the USPTO's objective to continually improve the accuracy and usefulness of its financial management tools.

The following sections provide a discussion and analysis of the financial statements and related information.

## STATEMENT OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES

The following table displays the USPTO's total budgetary resources available for spending over the past four years, with the related percentage change. Also presented are the human resources that the USPTO has employed to respond to the increases in patent and trademark filings. The resources available for spending do not include amounts that were not available through September 30, 2005, but will become available for spending on October 1, 2005.

Resources	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Budgetary Resources Available for Spending <i>(dollars in millions)</i>	\$1,146.7	\$1,193.0	\$1,235.2	\$1,511.1
<i>Percentage Change</i>	9.2%	4.0%	3.5%	22.3%
Patent Examiners	3,538	3,579	3,681	4,177
<i>Percentage Change</i>	15.6%	1.2%	2.8%	13.5%
Trademark Examining Attorneys	258	256	286	357
<i>Percentage Change</i>	(33.7)%	(0.8)%	11.7%	24.8%

As evident from the above table, total budgetary resources available for spending increased significantly in FY 2005, a 22.3 percent increase over the prior fiscal year and only a 31.8 percent increase over the past three fiscal years. This increase in available budgetary resources was partially used to fund the increased cost of additional human capital to address the growing average complexity of patent applications and the increase in patent and trademark filings.



Filings	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Patent Filings	353,394	355,418	378,984	409,532
Percentage Change	2.5%	0.6%	6.6%	8.1%
Trademark Filings	258,873	267,218	298,489	323,501
Percentage Change	(12.7%)	3.2%	11.7%	8.4%

The increase in available budgetary resources also allows the USPTO to apply additional funds towards the accomplishment of strategic goals and other initiatives that are associated with the performance goals contained in the *21st Century Strategic Plan* and the PMA. The plan aims to transform the USPTO into a quality-focused, highly productive, responsive organization supporting a market-driven intellectual property system.

The USPTO fee collections did not exceed the fee appropriation of \$1,554.8 million during FY 2005, therefore the USPTO was able to spend all \$1,497.2 million of fees collected during the year. The USPTO did not meet planned fee collections primarily due to a decrease in patent claims fees because the number of claims submitted in patent applications were less than planned, and a decrease in patent issue fees, attributed to an enhanced emphasis on quality and a reduction in patent allowance rates. The FY 2005 fee collections increased 13.3 percent over FY 2004 collections of \$1,321.0 million, of which \$1,222.5 million was appropriated. This increase in collections is due to an increase in patent and trademark application filings, the revision of patent and trademark fees in general, as well as the separation of the patent application fee into a separate filing fee, search fee, and examination fee.

As defined earlier, temporarily unavailable fee collections occur when the USPTO is not appropriated the authority to spend all fees collected during a given year. During FY 2005, the USPTO did not collect any fee collections that were designated as temporarily unavailable. As a result, the \$516.5 million in temporarily unavailable fee collections at the end of FY 2004 remained the same through FY 2005.

The below chart illustrates amounts that Congress has appropriated to the USPTO over the past four fiscal years, as well as the cumulative unavailable fee collections.

Temporary Unavailable Fee Collections (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Fiscal year fee collections	\$ 1,150.8	\$ 1,193.7	\$ 1,321.0	\$ 1,497.2
Fiscal year collections appropriated	(843.7)	(1,015.2)	(1,222.5)	(1,497.2)
Reductions - Rescissions	(0.6)	-	77.0	-
Fiscal year unavailable collections	\$ 306.5	\$ 178.5	\$ 175.5	\$ -
Prior year collections unavailable	305.1	329.3	341.0	516.5
Prior year collections subsequently appropriated	(282.3)	( 166.8)	-	-
Cumulative temporarily unavailable fee collections	<u>\$ 329.3</u>	<u>\$ 341.0</u>	<u>\$ 516.5</u>	<u>\$ 516.5</u>

In addition to these annual restrictions, collections of \$233.5 million are unavailable in accordance with OBRA of 1990, and deposited in a special fund receipt account at the U.S. Department of the Treasury.

## STATEMENT OF NET COST

The Statement of Net Cost presents the USPTO's results of operations by Patent and Trademark business areas. The following table presents the total USPTO's results of operations for the past four fiscal years.

Net Cost (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Earned Revenue	\$1,061.4	\$1,162.3	\$1,239.0	\$1,372.8
Program Cost	(1,161.0)	(1,206.1)	(1,289.2)	(1,424.0)
Net Cost	<u>\$ 99.6</u>	<u>\$ 43.8</u>	<u>\$ 50.2</u>	<u>\$ 51.2</u>

The Statement of Net Cost compares fees earned to costs incurred during a specific period of time. It is not necessarily an indicator of net income or net cost over the life of a patent or trademark. Net income or net cost for the fiscal year is dependent upon the groups of work that have been completed over the various phases of the production life cycle. The net income calculation is based on fees earned during the fiscal year being reported, regardless of when those fees were collected. Maintenance fees play a large part in whether a total net income or net cost is recognized. Maintenance fees collected in FY 2005 are a reflection of patent issue levels 3.5, 7.5, and 11.5 years ago, rather than a reflection of patents issued in FY 2005. Therefore, maintenance fees can have a significant impact on matching costs and revenue. For example, in order to reduce the net cost associated with the patent business line to zero, maintenance fees collected would have needed to be 13.2 percent greater — and the desire to maintain a patent is in the hands of the patent holder and not within the influence of the USPTO. Another example is that first action pendency would have needed to increase by only 0.5 months, instead of 0.9 months, without incurring any related increase in costs.

From FY 2002 through FY 2005, the USPTO's operations resulted in a net cost. However, in FY 2005, due to changes in the fee schedule and continued increases in filings, the USPTO net cost of operations only increased \$1.0 million.

## EARNED REVENUE

The USPTO's earned revenue is derived from the fees collected for patent and trademark products and services. Fee collections are recognized as earned revenue when the activities to complete the work associated with the fee are completed. The following table presents the earned revenue for the past four years.

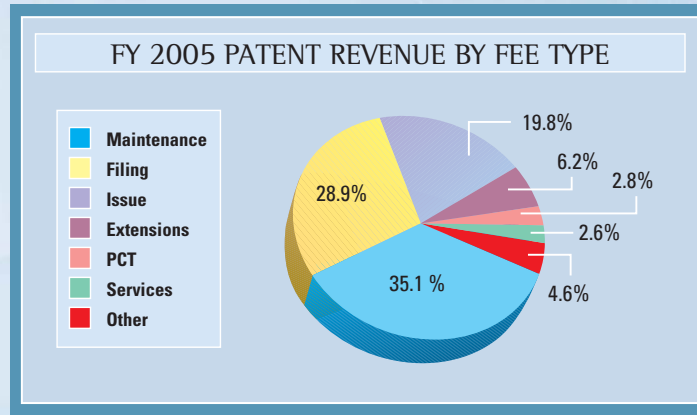
Earned Revenue (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Patent	\$ 910.1	\$1,004.5	\$1,092.5	\$1,197.8
Percentage Change in Patent Earned Revenue	5.9%	10.4%	8.8%	9.6%
Trademark	<u>151.3</u>	<u>157.8</u>	<u>146.5</u>	<u>175.0</u>
Percentage Change in Trademark Earned Revenue	(16.5)%	4.3%	(7.2)%	19.5%
Total Earned Revenue	<u>\$1,061.4</u>	<u>\$1,162.3</u>	<u>\$1,239.0</u>	<u>\$1,372.8</u>
Percentage Change in Earned Revenue	2.0%	9.5%	6.6%	10.8%

Earned revenue totaled \$1,372.8 million for FY 2005, an increase of \$133.8 million, or 10.8 percent, over FY 2004 earned revenue of \$1,239.0 million. Of revenue earned during FY 2005, \$327.5 million related to fee collections that were deferred for revenue recognition in prior fiscal years, \$418.8 million related to maintenance fees collected during FY 2005, which were considered earned immediately, \$621.0 million related to work performed for fees collected during FY 2005, and \$5.5 million that were not fee-related.

## PATENT

Traditionally, the major components of earned revenue derived from patent operations are maintenance fees, filing fees, and issue fees. These fees account for over 80 percent of total patent income. The chart on the right depicts the relationship among the most significant patent fee types.

Patent maintenance fees are the largest source of earned revenue by fee type. As these are recognized immediately as earned revenue, any fluctuations in the rates of renewal have a significant impact on the total earned revenue of the USPTO. To some extent, renewals recoup costs incurred during the initial patent process. As shown below, the renewal rates for all three stages of maintenance fees have been increasing modestly over the last four years and the trend indicates that this growth pattern will continue.



Patent Renewal Rates*	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005 <sup>1</sup>
First Stage	85.1%	86.8%	91.9%	83.1%
Second Stage	59.5%	61.1%	65.7%	65.4%
Third Stage	38.4%	42.9%	43.8%	45.0%

**\* Note:** The First Stage refers to the end of the 3rd year after the initial patent is issued; the Second Stage refers to the end of the 7th year after the initial patent is issued; and the Third Stage refers to the end of the 11th year after the initial patent is issued. For example, in FY 2005, 83.1 percent of the patents issued three years ago were renewed, 65.4 percent of the patents issued seven years ago were renewed, and 45.1 percent of the patents issued 11 years ago were renewed.

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary data

Earned filing fee revenue increased from \$289.1 million in FY 2004 to \$344.9 million in FY 2005, with the number of applications increasing from 378,984 to 409,532 over the same period, increases of 19.3 percent and 8.1 percent, respectively. The FY 2006 President's Budget Request projects an increase of 5.5 percent in patent applications filed beginning in FY 2006 and extending through FY 2010, which will contribute to the continued growth in earned fee revenue.

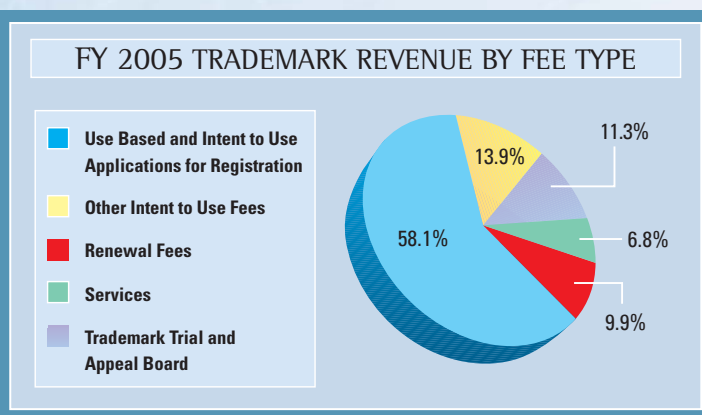
Earned issue fee revenue decreased from \$242.2 million in FY 2004 to \$235.9 million in FY 2005, with the number of patents issued decreasing from 187,170 to 165,485 over the same period, decreases of 2.6 percent and 11.6 percent, respectively. The number of patents issued in FY 2005 temporarily decreased resulting from an enhanced emphasis on quality and a reduction in patent allowance rates. The FY 2006 President's Budget Request projects that patents issued will increase an average of 10.9 percent each fiscal year through FY 2010.

## TRADEMARK

Trademark fees are comprised of application filing, renewal services, and Trademark Trial and Appeal Board fees. Additional fees are charged for intent-to-use filed applications, as additional requirements must be met for registration. The chart on the right depicts the relationship among the most significant trademark fee types.

Trademark application fee revenue increased from \$73.7 million in FY 2004 to \$101.5 million in FY 2005, with the number of applications increasing from 298,489 to 323,501 over the same period, increases of 37.7 percent and 8.4 percent, respectively. The FY 2006 President's Budget Request projects that trademark applications filed will continue to increase, which will contribute to the continued growth in earned fee revenue.

Trademark registration can be a recurring source of revenue. To some extent, renewal fees recoup costs incurred during the initial examination process. As shown below, the renewal rates for trademarks have remained fairly stable over the last four years, indicating continued earned revenue from this source. Further, in the FY 2006 President's Budget Request, earned revenue from trademark renewals is expected to continue in the future.



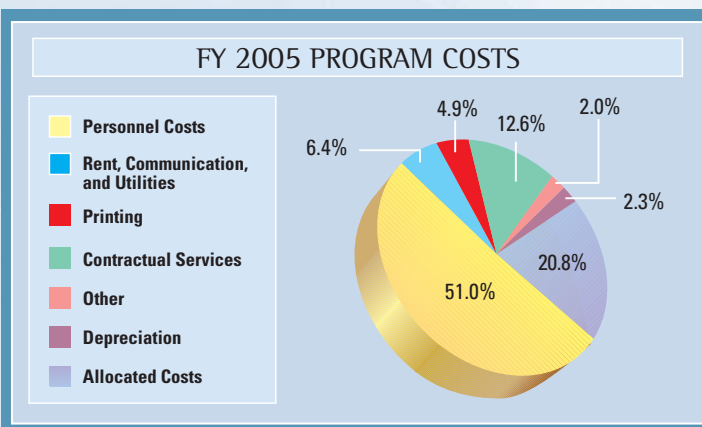
Trademark Renewal Rates	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Renewals	29.7%	29.6%	28.7%	23.3%

**Note:** the renewals occur every 10th year for trademarks registered after November 15, 1989. For trademarks issued or renewed before November 15, 1989, renewal will occur after the 20th year and the renewal will be for a ten-year period. For example, in FY 2005, 23.3 percent of the trademarks granted ten and 20 years ago were renewed.

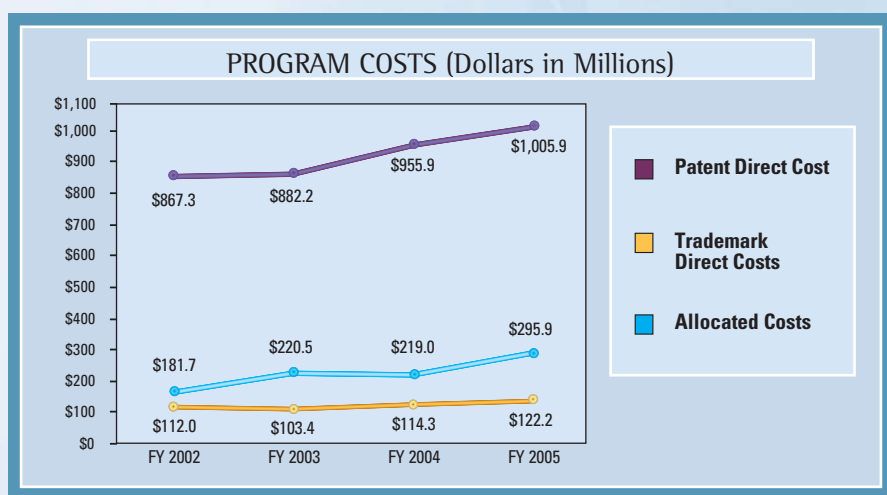
## PROGRAM COSTS

Program costs totaled \$1,424.0 million for the year ended September 30, 2005, an increase of \$134.8 million, or 10.5 percent, over FY 2004 program costs of \$1,289.2 million. The USPTO's most significant program cost is personnel services and benefits, which traditionally comprise over half of USPTO's total program costs. Any significant change or fluctuation in staffing or pay rate directly impacts the change in total program costs from year to year. Total personnel services and benefits costs for the year ended September 30, 2005, were \$802.2 million, an increase of \$57.0 million, or 7.6 percent, over FY 2004 personnel services and benefits costs of \$745.2 million. This change, 42.3 percent of the total increase in program costs, was a result of a 3.7 percent increase in the Federal pay scale, combined with a net increase of 547 personnel, from 6,816 at the end of FY 2004 to 7,363 at the end of FY 2005.

The USPTO directs maximum resources to the priority functions of patent and trademark examination. For FY 2005, costs directly attrib-







utable to the Patent and Trademark business areas represent 79.2 percent of total USPTO costs. The remaining costs, representing support costs, are allocated to the business areas using ABC accounting. Allocated costs in FY 2005 appear to increase, however a change in presentation is causing the increase, not an actual increase in cost.

## PATENT

Total costs for the Patent business area increased from \$1,145.8 million in FY 2004 to \$1,253.1 million for FY 2005, representing an increase of 9.4 percent. The following table presents the major components of Patent costs for the past four years.

Patent Costs (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Personnel Costs	\$ 535.5	\$ 566.3	\$ 603.6	\$ 646.5
Contractual Services	123.4	125.1	150.4	156.1
Printing and Reproduction	65.2	72.7	71.8	68.9
Rent, Communications, and Utilities	60.2	62.9	76.3	82.6
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on Asset Disposition	41.3	36.4	32.5	26.1
Other	15.5	18.8	21.3	25.7
Direct Costs	841.1	882.2	955.9	1,005.9
Allocated Costs	181.2	191.9	189.9	247.2
Total Patent Costs	<u>\$ 1,022.3</u>	<u>\$ 1,074.1</u>	<u>\$ 1,145.8</u>	<u>\$ 1,253.1</u>
Percentage Change in Patent Costs	15.8%	5.1%	6.7%	9.4%

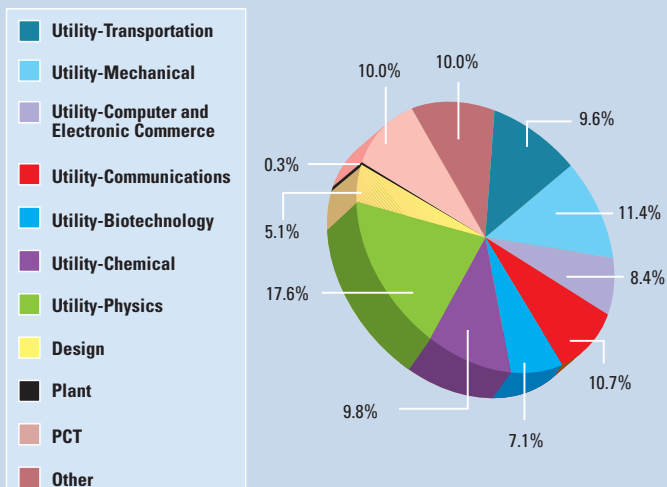
The USPTO's most significant program costs relate to personnel services, and account for 48.1 percent of the increase in total cost of Patent operations during the past three years. Patent personnel costs for the year ended September 30, 2005, were \$646.5 million, an increase of \$42.9 million, or 7.1 percent, over FY 2004 personnel costs of \$603.6 million. Rent, communications, and utilities, printing and reproduction, and contractual service costs represent 24.5 percent of the Patent program costs for FY 2005. Over the last three years, these costs increased in line with the overall increase in total Patent costs due to additional rental costs for the new USPTO headquarters in Alexandria, and increased spending on IT maintenance and development. In FY 2005, printing costs decreased 4.0 percent, consistent with the decrease in the number of patents issued. In addition, the increases in rental costs are temporary and will begin to level off now that the move to Alexandria has been completed.

Patent costs were spread over four main patent products: utility patents, design patents, plant patents, and PCT patents. Utility patents were further broken down into the technology of the utility patent. The cost percentages presented to the right are based on direct and indirect costs allocated to patent operations and are a function of the volume of applications processed in each product area.

## TRADEMARK

Total costs for the Trademark business unit were largely unchanged from FY 2002 through FY 2004. However, total Trademark costs increased \$27.5 million, 19.2 percent, over FY 2004 costs. The following table shows the major components of Trademark costs for that period.

FY 2005 PATENT COST BY PRODUCT

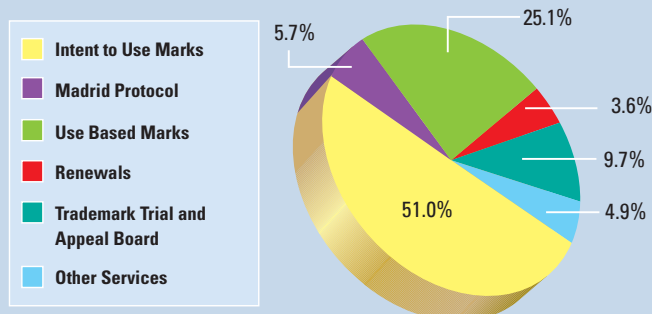


Trademark Costs (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Personnel Costs	\$ 72.3	\$ 65.4	\$ 72.6	\$ 80.0
Contractual Services	18.2	19.9	22.3	23.2
Printing and Reproduction	2.2	2.6	1.2	0.8
Rent, Communications, and Utilities	8.7	7.5	8.9	8.4
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on Asset Disposition	3.9	4.5	4.9	6.1
Other	2.6	3.5	4.4	3.7
Direct Costs	107.9	103.4	114.3	122.2
Allocated Costs	30.8	28.6	29.1	48.7
Total Trademark Costs	\$ 138.7	\$ 132.0	\$ 143.4	\$ 170.9
Percentage Change in Total Trademark Costs	3.4%	(4.8%)	8.6%	19.2%

The most significant program costs relate to personnel services, which represent more than 46 percent of Trademark cost of operations for each of the past four years. These costs have increased \$7.7 million, or 23.9 percent, of the increase in total cost of trademark operations during the past three years. Contractual services have increased \$5.0 million, which represents 15.5 percent of the increase in total trademark costs over the past three years, primarily attributable to the increase in scanning contracts as the USPTO moves to a fully electronic workplace.

The Intent to Use cost includes costs related to examining both the application and the additional intent to use disclosures. The overall cost percentages presented to the right are based on both direct costs and indirect costs allocated to trademark operations and are a function of the volume of applications processed in each product area.

FY 2005 TRADEMARK COST by PRODUCT



## BALANCE SHEET AND STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN NET POSITION

At the end of FY 2005, the USPTO's consolidated Balance Sheet presents total assets of \$1,409.1 million, total liabilities of \$991.3 million, and a net position of \$417.8 million.

Total assets increased 28.6 percent over the last three years, resulting largely from the increase in Fund Balance with Treasury. The following table shows the changes in assets during this period.

Composition of USPTO Assets (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Cash	\$ 9.3	\$ 11.4	\$ 11.9	\$ 8.8
Fund Balance with Treasury	926.1	985.6	1,135.2	1,240.8
Property, Plant, and Equipment, Net	119.2	117.4	137.3	148.4
Accounts Receivable and Prepayments	40.9	37.1	12.9	11.1
Total Assets	<u>\$ 1,095.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,151.5</u>	<u>\$ 1,297.3</u>	<u>\$ 1,409.1</u>
Percentage Change in Total Assets	2.1%	5.1%	12.7%	8.6%

Fund Balance with Treasury is the single largest asset on the Balance Sheet and represents 88.1 percent of total assets at the end of FY 2005. This asset is comprised of unpaid obligated funds of \$403.2 million, temporarily unavailable fees of \$516.5 million, unavailable special fund receipts under OBRA of \$233.5 million, other funds held on deposit for customers of \$81.9 million, and unobligated funds of \$5.7 million.

The unavailable special fund receipts and the temporarily unavailable funds require Congressional appropriation before they will be available for USPTO's use. These funds, together with amounts obligated and held on deposit, represent 99.5 percent of the Fund Balance with Treasury.

The other major asset is property, plant, and equipment. The net balance of this asset has increased by \$29.2 million during the past three years, with the acquisition values of property, plant, and equipment increasing by \$99.1 million. Leasehold improvements at its consolidated headquarters in Alexandria of \$68.7 million are expected to provide significant cost savings in the future. In addition, investments in IT software and software in development increased \$43.0 million, in conjunction with the enhancement of the existing e-government capabilities in areas such as e-filing, application information retrieval, data and image capture, and web-based search systems. While there has been a decrease in IT equipment of \$13.5 million over the past three years, due to additional budgetary resources available for spending during FY 2005, this component of property and equipment increased \$4.6 million from FY 2004.

Total liabilities increased from \$828.2 million at the end of FY 2004 to \$991.3 million at the end of FY 2005, representing an increase of \$163.1 million, or 19.7 percent. The following table shows the change in liabilities during the past four years.

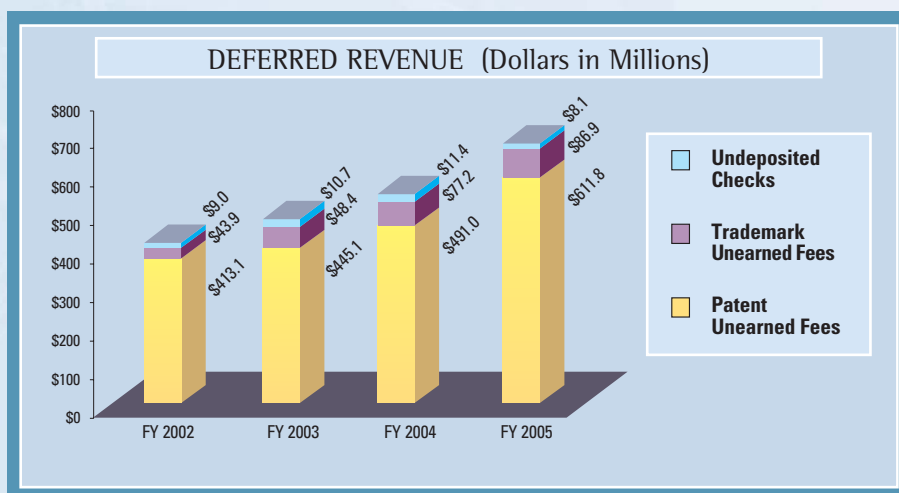
Composition of USPTO Liabilities (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Deferred Revenue	\$ 466.0	\$ 504.2	\$ 579.6	\$ 706.7
Accounts Payable	74.7	80.1	77.3	101.8
Accrued Payroll, Leave, and Benefits	68.0	75.4	83.4	90.7
Customer Deposit Accounts	64.8	74.4	70.7	74.1
Other Liabilities	11.3	14.2	17.2	18.0
Total Liabilities	<u>\$ 684.8</u>	<u>\$ 748.3</u>	<u>\$ 828.2</u>	<u>\$ 991.3</u>
Percentage Change in Total Liabilities	15.3%	9.3%	10.7%	19.7%

The USPTO's deferred revenue is the largest liability on the Balance Sheet. The liability for deferred revenue is calculated by analyzing the process for completing each service provided. The percent incomplete based on the inventory of pending work is applied to fee collections to estimate the amount for deferred revenue liability.

At the end of FY 2005, deferred revenue liability was \$706.7 million, representing an increase of \$240.7 million, or 51.7 percent, over the past three years. The deferred revenue liability includes unearned patent and trademark fees, as well as undeposited checks. The unearned patent fees represented 86.6 percent of this liability. The following graph depicts the composition of the deferred revenue liability, in addition to the increase in this liability during each of the past four years.

Deferred revenue at the USPTO is largely impacted by the change in patent and trademark filings, changes in first action pendency rates, and changes in fee rates. From FY 2002 through FY 2004, the percentage increase in deferred revenue is consistent with the percentage increases in first action pendency months. However, in FY 2005, the

percentage increase in first action pendency months was less than the percentage increase in deferred revenue as a result of the increased fees associated with the unearned patent and trademark application filings. The following table depicts the changes in the filings and pendencies during the past four years.



Filings and Pendencies	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Patent Filings	353,394	355,418	378,984	409,532
Percentage Change in Patent Filings	2.5%	0.6%	6.6%	8.1%
Patent First Action Pendency (months)	16.7	18.3	20.2	21.1
Percentage Change in Patent First Action Pendency	16.0%	9.6%	10.4%	4.5%
Total Patent Pendency (months)	24.0	26.7	27.6	29.1
Percentage Change in Total Patent Pendency	(2.8)%	11.3%	3.4%	5.4%
Trademark Filings	258,873	267,218	298,489	323,501
Percentage Change in Trademark Filings	(12.7)%	3.2%	11.7%	8.4%
Trademark First Action Pendency (months)	4.3	5.4	6.6	6.3
Percentage Change in Trademark First Action Pendency	59.3%	25.6%	22.2%	(4.5)%
Total Trademark Pendency (months)	19.9	19.8	19.5	19.6
Percentage Change in Total Trademark Pendency	11.8%	(0.5)%	(1.5)%	0.5%



Deferred revenue associated with the patent process is expected to further increase. In the FY 2006 President's Budget Request, the number of patent applications filed from FY 2006 through FY 2010 are expected to increase approximately 5.5 percent each year, with first action pendency increasing to 22.2 months in FY 2007 and total pendency increasing to 32.2 months in FY 2008. Once the pendency starts to decrease in FY 2009, patent deferred revenue will likewise decrease. In addition, if the USPTO fee schedule authorized for two years in the Consolidated Appropriations Act of 2005 (Public Law 108-447) is not reauthorized in FY 2007, the USPTO fees will decrease, causing a decrease in the deferred revenue liability.

While the deferred revenue associated with the trademark process has been increasing, estimates included in the FY 2006 President's Budget Request project a decrease in FY 2006 when first action pendency decreases to 5.3 months and total pendency decreases to 18.7 months.

The Statement of Changes in Net Position presents the changes in the financial position of the USPTO due to results of operations and unexpended appropriations. The major components of the movement in net position are the net income or net cost for the year, and the post-retirement costs for USPTO employees. For FY 2004 and prior, the USPTO recognized an imputed financing source and corresponding expense to represent its share of the cost to the federal government of providing pension and post-retirement health and life insurance benefits to all eligible USPTO employees. Beginning in FY 2005, the USPTO is now funding the costs of post-retirement benefits and the pension liabilities, resulting in an expense using earned revenue in the statement of net cost, without an imputed financing source. The change in the net position during the past four years is presented in the following table.

USPTO Net Position (Dollars in Millions)	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
Net Position	\$ 410.7	\$ 403.2	\$ 469.1	\$ 417.8
Percentage Change in Net Position	(14.2)%	(1.8)%	16.3%	(10.9)%

The decrease in net position from \$469.1 million at the end of FY 2004 to \$417.8 million at the end of FY 2005, or 10.9 percent, is attributable largely to the results of operations. The significant increase in net position during FY 2004 is attributable largely to reversing the permanent rescission of \$75.6 million to a temporarily unavailable reduction in budgetary resources.

## LIMITATIONS

The USPTO has prepared its FY 2005 financial statements in accordance with the requirements of OMB Circular A-136, *Financial Reporting Requirements*, and guidance provided by the Department of Commerce. OMB Circular A-136 incorporates the concepts and standards contained in the Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) and the Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) recommended by the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) and approved by the Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of the OMB, and the Comptroller General.

On October 19, 1999, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants Council designated the FASAB as the accounting standards-setting body for Federal government entities. Therefore, the SFFAS constitute accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (GAAP) for the Federal government. These concepts and standards have been set by FASAB to help Federal agencies comply with the requirements of the *Chief Financial Officers' Act of 1990*, as amended by the *Government Management Reform Act of 1994*. These two Acts demand financial accountability from Federal agencies and require the integration of accounting, financial management, and cost accounting systems.

The financial data in this report and the financial statements that follow have been prepared from the accounting records of the USPTO in conformity with GAAP for the federal government. The USPTO's financial statements consist of the Balance Sheet, the Statement of Net Cost, the Statement of Changes in Net Position, the Statement of Budgetary Resources, the Statement of Financing, and the Statement of Cash Flows. The financial statements were prepared pursuant to the requirements of 31 (United States Code) U.S.C. 3515 (b). The following limitations apply to the preparation of the financial statements:

- While the statements are prepared from books and records in accordance with the formats prescribed by the OMB, the statements are in addition to the financial reports used to monitor and control budgetary resources, which are prepared from the same books and records.
- The statements should be read with the realization that the USPTO is a component of the U.S. Government, a sovereign entity. One implication is that unfunded liabilities cannot be liquidated without legislation that provides resources to do so.

In addition, certain information contained in this financial discussion and analysis and in other parts of this Performance and Accountability Report may be deemed forward-looking statements regarding events and financial trends that may affect future operating results and financial position. Such statements may be identified by words such as "estimate," "project," "plan," "intend," "believe," "expect," "anticipate," or variations or negatives thereof or by similar or comparable words or phrases. Prospective statements are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed in the statements. Such risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to, the following: changes in U.S. or international intellectual property laws; changes in U.S. or global economic conditions; the availability, hiring and retention of qualified staff employees; management of patent and trademark growth; Government regulations; disputes with labor organizations; and deployment of new technologies. The USPTO undertakes no obligation to publicly update these financial statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date hereof, or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events.

## MANAGEMENT RESPONSIBILITIES

USPTO management is responsible for the fair presentation of information contained in the principal financial statements, in conformity with GAAP, the requirements of OMB Circular A-136, and guidance provided by The Department of Commerce. Management is also responsible for the fair presentation of the USPTO's performance measures in accordance with OMB requirements. The quality of the USPTO's internal control rests with management, as does the responsibility for identifying and complying with pertinent laws and regulations.

# Principal Financial Statements and Related Notes







## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Intragovernmental:		
Fund Balance with Treasury (Note 2)	\$ 1,240,798	\$ 1,135,268
Accounts Receivable	50	35
Advances and Prepayments	2,729	6,370
Total Intragovernmental	1,243,577	1,141,673
Cash	8,874	11,871
Accounts Receivable, Net	2,666	1,303
Advances and Prepayments	5,631	5,162
Property and Equipment, Net (Note 4)	148,401	137,303
Total Assets	\$ 1,409,149	\$ 1,297,312
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Intragovernmental:		
Accounts Payable	\$ 5,163	\$ 2,220
Accrued Payroll and Benefits	5,409	4,108
Accrued Postemployment Compensation	1,367	1,522
Customer Deposit Accounts (Note 3)	4,230	3,906
Total Intragovernmental	16,169	11,756
Accounts Payable	96,607	75,067
Accrued Payroll and Benefits	46,221	40,365
Accrued Leave	39,097	38,935
Customer Deposit Accounts (Note 3)	69,844	66,863
Patent Cooperation Treaty Account (Note 3)	9,035	8,195
Madrid Protocol Account (Note 3)	334	—
Deferred Revenue (Note 6)	706,734	579,596
Actuarial Liability (Note 7)	7,278	7,484
Total Liabilities (Note 5)	\$ 991,319	\$ 828,261
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
Unexpended Appropriations	\$ 26	\$ 23
Cumulative Results of Operations	417,804	469,028
Total Net Position	\$ 417,830	\$ 469,051
Total Liabilities and Net Position	\$ 1,409,149	\$ 1,297,312

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF NET COST

For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
<b>Strategic Goal 1: Enhance Patent Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>		
Total Program Cost	\$ 1,149,793	\$ 1,062,744
Total Program Earned Revenue	(1,197,781)	(1,092,491)
Net Program Income	(47,988)	(29,747)
<b>Strategic Goal 2: Enhance Trademark Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>		
Total Program Cost	149,145	126,287
Total Program Earned Revenue	(175,026)	(146,532)
Net Program Income	(25,881)	(20,245)
<b>Strategic Goal 3: Create a Flexible Organization Through E-Government and Worldwide Intellectual Property</b>		
Total Program Cost	125,090	100,150
Net Cost of Operations	\$ 51,221	\$ 50,158
<b>Total Entity</b>		
Total Program Cost (Notes 11 and 12)	\$ 1,424,028	\$ 1,289,181
Total Earned Revenue	(1,372,807)	(1,239,023)
Net Cost of Operations (Note 10)	\$ 51,221	\$ 50,158

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN NET POSITION

For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005		2004	
	Cumulative Results of Operations	Unexpended Appropriations	Cumulative Results of Operations	Unexpended Appropriations
Net Position, Beginning of Year	\$ 469,028	\$ 23	\$ 403,152	\$ 25
Budgetary Financing Sources:				
Appropriations Used	(3)	3	2	(2)
Other Budgetary Financing Sources (Note 2)	—	—	75,584	—
Other Financing Sources:				
Imputed Financing (Note 9)	—	—	40,448	—
Total Financing Sources	(3)	3	116,034	(2)
Net Cost of Operations	(51,221)	—	(50,158)	—
Net Change	(51,224)	3	65,876	(2)
Net Position, End of Year	\$ 417,804	\$ 26	\$ 469,028	\$ 23

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE COMBINED STATEMENTS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES

For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
Unobligated Balance - Beginning of Year (Note 13)	\$ 2,363	\$ 3,540
Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections:		
Earned - Collected	1,373,808	1,247,238
Earned - Customer Receivables and Refund Payables	(52)	(167)
Change in Unfilled Customer Orders - Advances Received	130,458	74,649
Total Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections	1,504,214	1,321,720
Actual Recoveries of Prior Year Obligations	7,543	10,362
Temporarily not Available Pursuant to Public Law	—	(175,486)
Permanently not Available (Note 2)	—	75,584
Total Budgetary Resources	\$ 1,514,120	\$ 1,235,720
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
Obligations Incurred – Reimbursable	\$ 1,508,392	\$ 1,233,357
Unobligated Balance Available:		
Realized and Apportioned for Current Year (Note 13)	2,763	1,844
Unobligated Balances not Available - Not Apportioned (Note 13)	2,965	519
Total Status of Budgetary Resources	\$ 1,514,120	\$ 1,235,720
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
Obligated Balance, Net, Beginning of Year	\$ 304,378	\$ 327,789
Accounts Receivable	927	875
Undelivered Orders (Note 14)	273,635	203,014
Accounts Payable	128,577	100,489
Obligated Balance, Net, End of Year	403,139	304,378
Outlays:		
Disbursements	1,402,140	1,246,573
Collections	(1,504,266)	(1,321,887)
Net Collections	\$ (102,126)	\$ (75,314)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.



## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF FINANCING

For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
<b>RESOURCES USED TO FINANCE ACTIVITIES</b>		
Budgetary Resources Obligated:		
Obligations Incurred	\$ 1,508,392	\$ 1,233,357
Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections and Recoveries	(1,511,757)	(1,332,082)
Net Obligations	(3,365)	(98,725)
Other Resources - Imputed Financing from Cost Absorbed by Others	—	40,448
Total Resources Used to Finance Activities	(3,365)	(58,277)
<b>RESOURCES USED TO FINANCE ITEMS NOT PART OF THE NET COST OF OPERATIONS</b>		
Change in Budgetary Resources Obligated for Goods, Services and Benefits Ordered but not yet Provided	(67,450)	43,765
Resources that Fund Costs Recognized in Prior Periods (Note 13)	(360)	(138)
Budgetary Offsetting Collections that do not Affect Net Cost of Operations (Note 13)	130,458	74,649
Resources that Finance the Acquisition of Assets Capitalized on the Balance Sheet	(66,181)	(75,511)
Total Resources Used to Finance Items not Part of the Net Cost of Operations	(3,533)	42,765
<b>COMPONENTS OF NET COST OF OPERATIONS THAT WILL NOT REQUIRE OR GENERATE RESOURCES IN THE CURRENT PERIOD</b>		
Components Requiring or Generating Resources in Future Periods:		
Costs that will be Funded by Resources in Future Periods (Note 13)	3,647	2,510
Net (Increase)/Decrease in Revenue Receivables not Generating Resources until Collected	(576)	7,528
Total Components of Net Cost of Operations that will Require or Generate Resources in Future Periods	3,071	10,038
Components not Requiring or Generating Resources:		
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on Asset Dispositions	55,083	55,573
Other Costs that will not Require Resources	(35)	59
Total Components of Net Cost of Operations that will not Require or Generate Resources	55,048	55,632
Total Components of Net Cost of Operations that will not Require or Generate Resources in the Current Period	58,119	65,670
Net Cost of Operations	\$ 51,221	\$ 50,158

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (INDIRECT METHOD)

For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Net Cost of Operations	\$ (51,221)	\$ (50,158)
Adjustments Affecting Cash Flow:		
Imputed Financing from Cost Absorbed by Others	—	40,448
(Increase)/Decrease in Accounts Receivable	(1,378)	7,553
Decrease in Advances and Prepayments	3,172	16,698
Increase/(Decrease) in Accounts Payable	24,483	(2,837)
Increase in Accrued Payroll and Benefits	7,157	7,066
Increase in Accrued Leave and Postemployment Benefits	7	842
Increase/(Decrease) in Customer Deposit Accounts	3,305	(3,638)
Increase in Patent Cooperation Treaty Account	840	2,086
Increase in Madrid Protocol Account	334	—
Increase in Deferred Revenue	127,138	75,403
(Decrease)/Increase in Actuarial Liability	(206)	990
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on Asset Dispositions	55,083	55,573
Total Adjustments	219,935	200,184
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	168,714	150,026
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Purchases of Property and Equipment	(66,181)	(75,511)
Net Cash Used in Investing Activities	(66,181)	(75,511)
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Rescissions Restored (Note 2)	—	75,584
Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities	—	75,584
Net Cash Provided by Operating, Investing, and Financing Activities	\$ 102,533	\$ 150,099
Fund Balance with Treasury and Cash, Beginning of Year	\$1,147,139	\$ 997,040
Net Cash Provided by Operating, Investing, and Financing Activities	102,533	150,099
Fund Balance with Treasury and Cash, End of Year	\$1,249,672	\$1,147,139

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

As of and for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004

### NOTE 1. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

#### Reporting Entity

The United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) is an agency of the United States within the U.S. Department of Commerce. The USPTO administers the laws relevant to patents and trademarks and advises the Secretary of Commerce, the President of the United States, and the Administration on patent, trademark, and copyright protection, and trade-related aspects of intellectual property.

These financial statements include the USPTO's two core business activities – granting patents and registering trademarks – that promote the use of intellectual property rights as a means of achieving economic prosperity. These activities give innovators, businesses, and entrepreneurs the protection and encouragement they need to turn their creative ideas into tangible products, and also provide protection for their inventions and trademarks.

These financial statements report the accounts for salaries and expenses (13X1006), special fund receipts (135127), customer deposits from the public (13X6542), customer deposits from other federal agencies (13F3885), Patent Cooperation Treaty collections (13X6538), and Madrid Protocol collections (13X6554) which are under the control of the USPTO. The federal budget classifies the USPTO under the Other Advancement of Commerce (376) budget function. The USPTO does not have custodial responsibility, nor does it have lending or borrowing authority. The USPTO does not transact business among its own operating units, and therefore, no intra-entity eliminations are necessary.

#### Basis of Presentation

As required by the Chief Financial Officers' Act of 1990 and 31 U.S.C. 3515 (b), the accompanying financial statements present the financial position, net cost of operations, budgetary resources, and cash flows for the USPTO's core business activities. The books and records of the USPTO serve as the source of this information.

These financial statements were prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S. (GAAP) and the form and content for entity financial statements specified by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) in Circular A-136, *Financial Reporting Requirements*, as well as the accounting policies of the USPTO. Therefore, they may differ from other financial reports submitted pursuant to OMB directives for the purpose of monitoring and controlling the use of the USPTO's budgetary resources. The GAAP for federal entities are the standards prescribed by the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB), which is the official body for setting the accounting standards of the federal government. There were no changes in GAAP during FY 2005 that affected the financial statements. Certain prior year balances were reclassified to conform with current year presentation.

Throughout these financial statements, assets, liabilities, revenues, and costs have been classified according to the type of entity with which the transactions are associated. Intra-governmental assets and liabilities are those from or to other federal entities. Intra-governmental earned revenues are collections or accruals of revenue from other federal entities and intra-governmental costs are payments or accruals to other federal entities.

#### Basis of Accounting

Transactions are recorded on the accrual basis of accounting, as well as on a budgetary basis. Accrual accounting allows for revenue to be recognized when earned and expenses to be recognized when goods or services are received, without regard to the receipt or payment of cash. Budgetary accounting allows for compliance with the requirements for and controls over the use of federal funds. The accompanying financial statements are presented on the accrual basis of accounting.



## **Budgets and Budgetary Accounting**

Total budgetary resources are primarily comprised of Congressional authority to spend current year fee collections, as well as fees collected in a prior year that were previously temporarily unavailable. Temporarily unavailable fee collections occur when the Congress does not provide appropriation authority for the USPTO to spend all fees collected during the given fiscal year.

In FY 2005 and FY 2004, the USPTO was appropriated up to \$1,554,754 thousand and \$1,222,460 thousand for fees collected during each fiscal year, respectively. During FY 2005, the USPTO collected \$57,603 thousand less than the amount appropriated. In accordance with Public Law 108-447, the USPTO adjusted its spending from fee collections to \$1,497,151 thousand. For FY 2004, the USPTO's fee collections of \$1,320,950 thousand exceeded the congressional authority, leaving \$98,490 thousand that was not available for spending.

In addition to these annual restrictions, certain USPTO collections of \$233,529 thousand were withheld in accordance with the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act (OBRA) of 1990, and deposited in a special fund receipt account at the U.S. Department of the Treasury.

The total temporarily unavailable fee collections pursuant to Public Law at the end of FY 2005 are \$750,028 thousand.

The USPTO receives an appropriation of Category A funds from OMB, which apportions budgetary resources by fiscal quarter. The USPTO does not receive any Category B funds, or those exempt from apportionment.

## **Use of Estimates**

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from these estimates.

## **Revenue and Other Financing Sources**

The USPTO's fee rates are established by law and, consequently, in some instances may not represent full cost or market price. Since FY 1993, the USPTO funding has been primarily through the collection of user fees. Fees that are remitted with initial applications and requests for other services are recorded as exchange revenue when received, with an adjustment to defer revenue for services that have not been performed. All amounts remitted by customers without a request for service are recorded as liabilities in customer deposit accounts until services are ordered.

The USPTO also receives some financial gifts and gifts-in-kind. All such transactions are included in the consolidated Gifts and Bequests Fund financial statements of the Department of Commerce. These gifts are not of significant value and are not reflected in the USPTO's financial statements. Most gifts-in-kind are used for official travel to further attain the USPTO mission and objectives.

## **Entity/Non-Entity**

Assets that an entity is authorized to use in its operations are termed entity assets, while assets that are held by an entity and are not available for the entity's use are termed non-entity assets. Most of the USPTO's assets are entity assets and are available to carry out the mission of the USPTO, as appropriated by Congress, with the exception of a portion of the Fund Balance with Treasury, cash, and accounts receivable, as highlighted in Note 3.

## **Fund Balance with Treasury**

The USPTO deposits revenue in commercial bank accounts maintained by the Treasury's Financial Management Service (FMS). All moneys maintained in these accounts are transferred to the Federal Reserve Bank on the next business day following the day of deposit. In addition, many customer deposits are wired directly to the Federal Reserve Bank. All banking activity is conducted in accordance with the directives issued by the FMS. Treasury processes all disbursements.



## Accounts Receivable

Most of the USPTO's public accounts receivable balance consists of electronic funds transfer and credit card payments for fees that are in transit and have not been credited to the USPTO's accounts. As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, respectively, \$2,244 thousand and \$1,015 thousand are in transit due to the lag time between deposits in commercial bank accounts and the confirmation received from Treasury.

The remaining portion of accounts receivable are mainly comprised of amounts due from former employees for the reimbursement of education expenses and other benefits. This balance in accounts receivable remains as a very small portion of the USPTO's assets as the USPTO requires payment prior to the provision of goods or services during the course of its core business activities.

The USPTO recorded a \$1 thousand allowance for uncollectible amounts to reduce the gross amount of its employee-related accounts receivable to its net realizable value as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, respectively. The allowance is established for receivables that have been transferred to Treasury. The gross amount of USPTO's employee-related accounts receivable as of September 30, 2005 and 2004 was \$423 thousand and \$289 thousand, respectively.

## Advances and Prepayments

On occasion, the USPTO prepays amounts in anticipation of receiving future benefits. Although a payment has been made, an expense is not recorded until goods have been received or services have been performed. The USPTO has prepayments and advances with non-governmental, as well as governmental vendors.

Total prepayments and advances to non-governmental vendors as of September 30, 2005 and 2004 were \$5,631 thousand and \$5,162 thousand, respectively. The largest single prepayment as of September 30, 2005 was \$3,261 thousand for an annual operating lease for mass information technology storage space. The USPTO advances include funds to personnel for travel costs, which are expensed after travel has occurred. Travel advances to personnel as of September 30, 2005 were \$33 thousand.

Total prepayments and advances to governmental vendors as of September 30, 2005 and 2004 were \$2,729 thousand and \$6,370 thousand, respectively. The governmental prepayments include the USPTO deposit accounts held with the U.S. Government Printing Office and the U.S. Department of Commerce to facilitate recurring transactions. Deposit accounts held with the U.S. Government Printing Office as of September 30, 2005 were \$1,902 thousand. Deposit accounts held with the U.S. Department of Commerce as of September 30, 2005 were \$163 thousand.

## Cash

Most of the USPTO's cash balance consists of undeposited checks for fees that were not processed at the Balance Sheet date due to the lag time between receipt and initial review. All such undeposited check amounts are considered to be cash equivalents. As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, the cash balance includes undeposited checks of \$8,872 thousand and \$11,869 thousand, respectively. Of these balances, \$787 thousand and \$463 thousand were non-entity Patent Cooperation Treaty Account assets as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, respectively. Cash is also held outside the Treasury to be used as imprest funds. An imprest fund of \$2 thousand was held as of September 30, 2005 and 2004.

## Property, Plant, and Equipment, Net

The USPTO's capitalization policies are summarized below:

Classes of Property, Plant, and Equipment	Capitalization Threshold for Individual Purchases	Capitalization Threshold for Bulk Purchases
IT Equipment	\$25 thousand or greater	\$500 thousand or greater
Software	\$25 thousand or greater	Not applicable
Software in Progress	\$25 thousand or greater	Not applicable
Furniture	\$25 thousand or greater	\$ 50 thousand or greater
Equipment	\$25 thousand or greater	\$500 thousand or greater
Construction in Progress	\$25 thousand or greater	Not applicable
Leasehold Improvements	\$25 thousand or greater	Not applicable

Contractor costs for developing custom internal use software are capitalized when incurred for the design, coding, and testing of the software. Software in progress and construction in progress are not amortized until placed in service.

Property, plant, and equipment acquisitions that do not meet the capitalization criteria are expensed upon receipt.

### **Injury Compensation**

Claims brought by USPTO employees for on-the-job injuries fall under the Federal Employees Compensation Act (FECA) administered by the U.S. Department of Labor (DOL). The DOL bills each agency annually as its claims are paid, but payment on these bills is deferred approximately two years to allow for funding through the budget process. As of September 30, 2005, the USPTO had a \$1,328 thousand liability for claims paid on its behalf during the benefit period October 1, 2003 through September 30, 2005. As of September 30, 2004, the USPTO had a \$1,449 thousand liability for claims paid on its behalf during the benefit period October 1, 2002 through September 30, 2004.

### **Post-employment Compensation**

USPTO employees who lose their jobs through no fault of their own may receive unemployment compensation benefits under the unemployment insurance program administered by the DOL. The DOL bills each agency quarterly as its claims are paid. As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, the USPTO liability was \$39 thousand and \$73 thousand, respectively, for estimated claims paid by the DOL on behalf of the USPTO.

### **Annual, Sick, and Other Leave**

Annual leave and compensatory time are accrued as earned, with the accrual being reduced when leave is taken. An adjustment is made each fiscal quarter to ensure that the balances in the accrued leave accounts reflect current pay rates. No portion of this liability has been obligated. To the extent current or prior year funding is not available to pay for leave earned but not taken, funding will be obtained from future financing sources. Sick leave and other types of non-vested leave are expensed as used.

Accrued leave as of September 30, 2005 and 2004 was \$39,097 thousand and \$38,935 thousand, respectively.

### **Employee Retirement Systems and Benefits**

USPTO employees participate in either the Civil Service Retirement System (CSRS) or the Federal Employees Retirement System (FERS). The FERS was established by the enactment of Public Law 99-335. Pursuant to this law, the FERS and Social Security automatically cover most employees hired after December 31, 1983. Employees who had five years of federal civilian service prior to 1984 and who are rehired after a break in service of more than one year may elect to join the FERS and Social Security system or be placed in the CSRS offset retirement system.

The USPTO's financial statements do not report CSRS or FERS assets, accumulated plan benefits, or liabilities applicable to its employees. The reporting of such amounts is the responsibility of the U.S. Office of Personnel Management (OPM) who administers the plans. While the USPTO reported no liability for future payments to employees under these programs, the federal government is liable for future payments to employees through the various agencies administering these programs. The USPTO financial statements for FY 2005 recognize an expense, which represents the USPTO's share of the costs to the federal government of providing pension, post-retirement health, and post-retirement life insurance benefits to all eligible USPTO employees. Prior to FY 2005, the USPTO did not fully fund the pension and post-retirement health and life insurance benefits of all eligible USPTO employees. Instead, the USPTO recognized an imputed financing source and corresponding expense to represent its share of the cost to the federal government of providing pension and post-retirement health and life insurance benefits, to all eligible USPTO employees. The USPTO appropriation for FY 2005 required full funding of the present costs of post-retirement benefits such as the Federal Employees Health Benefit Program (FEHB) and the Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Program (FGLI), and to fully fund the CSRS and FERS pension liabilities. While ultimate administration of any post-retirement benefits or retirement system payments will continue to be administered by various federal government agencies, the USPTO is responsible for the payment of the present value associated with these costs calculated using the OPM factors.

For the year ended September 30, 2005, the USPTO made current year contributions equivalent to approximately 7.0 percent and 11.2 percent of the employee's basic pay for those employees covered by CSRS and FERS, respectively, based on OPM cost factors. For the year ended September 30, 2004, the USPTO made contributions equivalent to approximately 7.0 percent and 10.7 percent of the employee's basic pay for those employees covered by CSRS and FERS, respectively, based on OPM cost factors.

All employees are eligible to contribute to a thrift savings plan. For those employees participating in the FERS, a thrift savings plan is automatically established, and the USPTO makes a mandatory contribution to this plan equal to one percent of the employees' compensation. In addition, the USPTO makes matching contributions ranging from one to four percent of the employees' compensation for FERS-eligible employees who contribute to their thrift savings plans. No matching contributions are made to the thrift savings plans for employees participating in the CSRS. Employees participating in the FERS are also covered under the Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA), for which the USPTO contributes a matching amount to the Social Security Administration.

### Deferred Revenue

Deferred revenue represents fees that have been received by the USPTO for requested services that have not been substantially completed. Two types of deferred revenue are recorded. The first type results from checks received, with requests for services, which were not yet deposited due to the lag time between receipt and initial review. The second type of deferred revenue relates primarily to fees for applications that have been partially processed. The deferred revenue calculation is a complex accounting estimate, dependent upon numerous business and administrative processes, workloads, and inventories.

### Environmental Cleanup

The USPTO does not have any liabilities for environmental cleanup.

## NOTE 2. FUND BALANCE WITH TREASURY

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, Fund Balance with Treasury consisted of the following:

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
Obligated Balance Not Yet Disbursed	\$ 403,139	\$ 304,378
Unobligated Balance Available	2,763	1,844
Unobligated Balance Unavailable	752,992	750,545
Non-Budgetary Fund Balance with Treasury	81,904	78,501
Total Fund Balance with Treasury	\$ 1,240,798	\$ 1,135,268

No discrepancies exist between the Fund Balance reflected in the general ledger and the balance in the Treasury accounts.

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, the unobligated balance unavailable includes revenue withheld of \$233,529 thousand.

During FY 1999, FY 2000, and FY 2002, a total of \$75,584 thousand in fees were considered permanently rescinded. In FY 2004, OMB Circular A-11 clarified that rescissions of offsetting collections should now be considered reductions in budgetary resources and should be classified as either permanently or temporarily unavailable. Due to the clarification regarding rescissions and reductions, fee resources previously rescinded as permanently unavailable were restored to the USPTO and recorded as a reduction and classified as temporarily unavailable fee collections in FY 2004.



### NOTE 3. NON-ENTITY ASSETS

Non-entity assets consist of amounts held on deposit for the convenience of the USPTO customers and fees collected on behalf of the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) and the European Patent Office (EPO). Customers have the option of maintaining a deposit account at the USPTO to facilitate the order process. Customers can draw from their deposit account when they place an order and can replenish their deposit account as desired. Funds maintained in customer deposit accounts are not available for the USPTO use until an order has been placed. Once an order has been placed, the funds are reclassified to entity funds. Also, in accordance with the Patent Cooperation Treaty and the Madrid Protocol Implementation Act, the USPTO collects international fees on behalf of the WIPO and the EPO.

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005	2004
Fund Balance with Treasury:		
Intragovernmental Deposit Accounts	\$ 4,230	\$ 3,906
Other Customer Deposit Accounts	69,092	66,863
Patent Cooperation Treaty Account	8,248	7,732
Madrid Protocol Account	334	—
Total Fund Balance with Treasury	81,904	78,501
Cash:		
Patent Cooperation Treaty Account	787	463
Accounts Receivable:		
Other Customer Deposit Accounts	752	—
Total Non-Entity Assets	\$ 83,443	\$ 78,964



## NOTE 4. PROPERTY, PLANT, AND EQUIPMENT, NET

As of September 30, 2005, property, plant, and equipment, net consisted of the following:

(Dollars in Thousands)

Class of Fixed Asset	Depreciation/ Amortization Method	Service Life (Years)	Acquisition Value	Accumulated Depreciation/ Amortization	Net Book Value
IT Equipment	SL	3-5	\$ 197,719	\$ 163,412	\$ 34,307
Software	SL	3-5	179,566	147,274	32,292
Software in Progress	—	—	6,099	—	6,099
Furniture	SL	5	15,318	5,691	9,627
Equipment	SL	3-5	10,150	7,989	2,161
Leasehold Improvements	SL	5-20	68,724	4,809	63,915
Total Fixed Assets			\$ 477,576	\$ 329,175	\$ 148,401

As of September 30, 2004, property, plant, and equipment, net consisted of the following:

(Dollars in Thousands)

Class of Fixed Asset	Depreciation/ Amortization Method	Service Life (Years)	Acquisition Value	Accumulated Depreciation/ Amortization	Net Book Value
IT Equipment	SL	3-5	\$ 193,116	\$ 163,050	\$ 30,066
Software	SL	3-5	173,341	127,564	45,777
Software in Progress	—	—	5,893	—	5,893
Furniture	SL	5	10,541	6,312	4,229
Equipment	SL	3-5	10,798	10,094	704
Construction in Progress	—	—	25,196	—	25,196
Leasehold Improvements	SL	20	25,810	372	25,438
Total Fixed Assets			\$ 444,695	\$ 307,392	\$ 137,303

## NOTE 5. LIABILITIES

The USPTO records liabilities for amounts that are likely to be paid as the direct result of events that have already occurred. The USPTO considers liabilities covered by three types of resources: realized budgetary resources; unrealized budgetary resources that become available without further Congressional action; and cash and Fund Balance with Treasury. Realized budgetary resources include obligated balances funding existing liabilities and unobligated balances as of September 30, 2005. Unrealized budgetary resources are amounts that were not available for spending through September 30, 2005, but become available for spending on October 1, 2005 once apportioned by the OMB. In addition, cash and Fund Balance with Treasury cover liabilities that will never require the use of a budgetary resource. These liabilities consist of deposit accounts, refunds payable to customers for fee overpayments, undeposited collections, and amounts collected by the USPTO on behalf of other organizations.

Liabilities not covered by budgetary resources include Accrued Post-employment Compensation, Accrued Leave, Deferred Revenue, and Actuarial Liability. Although future appropriations to fund these liabilities are probable and anticipated, Congressional action is needed before budgetary resources can be provided.

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, liabilities covered and not covered by budgetary resources were as follows:

<b>(Dollars in Thousands)</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2004</b>
<b>Liabilities Covered by Resources</b>		
Intragovernmental:		
Accounts Payable	\$ 2,797	\$ 2,220
Accrued Payroll and Benefits	5,409	4,108
Customer Deposit Accounts	4,230	3,906
<b>Total Intragovernmental</b>	<b>12,436</b>	<b>10,234</b>
Accounts Payable	96,487	75,067
Accrued Payroll and Benefits	24,862	20,004
Customer Deposit Accounts	69,844	66,863
Patent Cooperation Treaty Account	9,035	8,195
Madrid Protocol	334	—
Deferred Revenue	13,812	13,769
<b>Total Liabilities Covered by Resources</b>	<b>\$ 226,810</b>	<b>\$ 194,132</b>
<b>Liabilities Not Covered by Resources</b>		
Intragovernmental:		
Accounts Payable	2,366	—
Accrued Post-employment Compensation	\$ 1,367	\$ 1,522
<b>Total Intragovernmental</b>	<b>3,733</b>	<b>1,522</b>
Accounts Payable	120	—
Accrued Payroll and Benefits	21,359	20,361
Accrued Leave	39,097	38,935
Deferred Revenue	692,922	565,827
Actuarial Liability	7,278	7,484
<b>Total Liabilities Not Covered by Resources</b>	<b>\$ 764,509</b>	<b>\$ 634,129</b>
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 991,319</b>	<b>\$ 828,261</b>

## NOTE 6. DEFERRED REVENUE

As of September 30, 2005, deferred revenue consisted of the following:

(Dollars in Thousands)	Patent	Trademark	Total
Unearned Fees	\$ 611,778	\$ 86,871	\$ 698,649
Undeposited Checks	7,125	960	8,085
Total Deferred Revenue	\$ 618,903	\$ 87,831	\$ 706,734

As of September 30, 2004, deferred revenue consisted of the following:

(Dollars in Thousands)	Patent	Trademark	Total
Unearned Fees	\$ 491,004	\$ 77,186	\$ 568,190
Undeposited Checks	10,231	1,175	11,406
Total Deferred Revenue	\$ 501,235	\$ 78,361	\$ 579,596

## NOTE 7. ACTUARIAL LIABILITY

The FECA provides income and medical cost protection to covered federal civilian employees injured on the job and for those who have contracted a work-related occupational disease, and beneficiaries of employees whose death is attributable to a job-related injury or occupational disease. Claims incurred for benefits under the FECA for the USPTO's employees are administered by the DOL and are paid ultimately by the USPTO.

The DOL estimated the future workers compensation liability by applying actuarial procedures developed to estimate the liability for FECA benefits. The actuarial liability estimates for FECA benefits include the expected liability for death, disability, medical, and miscellaneous costs for approved compensation cases, plus a component for incurred but not reported claims. The actuarial liability is updated annually.

The DOL method of determining the liability uses historical benefit payment patterns for a specific incurred period to predict the ultimate payments for that period. Consistent with past practice, these projected annual benefit payments have been discounted to present value using the OMB's economic assumptions for ten-year Treasury notes and bonds. Interest rate assumptions utilized for discounting were as follows:

2005	2004
4.53% in year 1, 5.02% in year 2, and thereafter	4.88% in year 1, 5.24% in year 2, and thereafter

Based on information provided by the DOL, the Department of Commerce estimated the USPTO's liability as of September 30, 2005 and 2004 was \$7,278 thousand and \$7,484 thousand, respectively.

## NOTE 8. LEASES

### Operating Leases:

The GSA negotiates long-term office space leases and levies rent charges, paid by the USPTO, approximate to commercial rental rates. These operating lease agreements for the USPTO's office buildings expire at various dates between FY 2006 and FY 2023. During the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004, the USPTO paid \$95,613 thousand and \$74,521 thousand, respectively, to the GSA for rent.

Under existing commitments, the future minimum lease payments as of September 30, 2005 are as follows:

Fiscal Year	(Dollars in Thousands)
2006	\$ 61,759
2007	60,068
2008	56,675
2009	56,343
2010	56,068
Thereafter	718,292
Total Future Minimum Lease Payments	\$ 1,009,205

The commitments shown above relate primarily to the operating lease for the USPTO headquarters in Alexandria, Virginia, beginning in FY 2004 and extending to FY 2023. The operating lease commitments for the USPTO offices in Crystal City, Virginia, will expire in FY 2008.

## NOTE 9. POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004, the post-employment benefit expenses were as follows:

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005		2004	
	Funded	Funded	Imputed	Total
CSRS	\$ 16,622	\$ 6,826	\$ 10,738	\$ 17,564
FERS	52,566	45,637	2,121	47,758
FEHB	32,319	—	27,504	27,504
FEGLI	105	—	85	85
FICA	36,463	33,840	—	33,840
Total Cost	\$ 138,075	\$ 86,303	\$ 40,448	\$ 126,751



## NOTE 10. INTRAGOVERNMENTAL COSTS AND EXCHANGE REVENUE

Total intragovernmental costs and exchange revenue, by Strategic Goal, for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004 were as follows:

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005		
	Patent	Trademark	Total
<b>Strategic Goal 1: Enhance Patent Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ 240,733	\$ —	\$ 240,733
Gross Cost with the Public	909,060	—	909,060
Total Program Cost	1,149,793	—	1,149,793
Intragovernmental Earned Revenue	(5,869)	—	(5,869)
Earned Revenue from the Public	(1,191,912)	—	(1,191,912)
Total Program Earned Revenue	(1,197,781)	—	(1,197,781)
Net Program Income	\$ (47,988)	\$ —	\$ (47,988)
<b>Strategic Goal 2: Enhance Trademark Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ —	\$ 31,227	\$ 31,227
Gross Cost with the Public	—	117,918	117,918
Total Program Cost	—	149,145	149,145
Intragovernmental Earned Revenue	—	(239)	(239)
Earned Revenue from the Public	—	(174,787)	(174,787)
Total Program Earned Revenue	—	(175,026)	(175,026)
Net Program Income	\$ —	\$ (25,881)	\$ (25,881)
<b>Strategic Goal 3: Create a Flexible Organization Through E-Government and Worldwide Intellectual Property</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ 21,635	\$ 4,555	\$ 26,190
Gross Cost with the Public	81,699	17,201	98,900
Total Program Cost	103,334	21,756	125,090
Net Cost/(Income) from Operations	\$ 55,346	\$ (4,125)	\$ 51,221
<b>Total Entity</b>			
Total Program Cost (Notes 11 and 12)	\$ 1,253,127	\$ 170,901	\$ 1,424,028
Total Earned Revenue	(1,197,781)	(175,026)	(1,372,807)
Net Cost/(Income) of Operations	\$ 55,346	\$ (4,125)	\$ 51,221

(Dollars in Thousands)

2004

	Patent	Trademark	Total
<b>Strategic Goal 1: Enhance Patent Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ 203,312	\$ —	\$ 203,312
Gross Cost with the Public	859,432	—	859,432
Total Program Cost	1,062,744	—	1,062,744
Intragovernmental Earned Revenue	(5,218)	—	(5,218)
Earned Revenue from the Public	(1,087,273)	—	(1,087,273)
Total Program Earned Revenue	(1,092,491)	—	(1,092,491)
Net Program Income	\$ (29,747)	\$ —	\$ (29,747)
<b>Strategic Goal 2: Enhance Trademark Quality and Minimize Processing Time</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ —	\$ 24,160	\$ 24,160
Gross Cost with the Public	—	102,127	102,127
Total Program Cost	—	126,287	126,287
Intragovernmental Earned Revenue	—	(209)	(209)
Earned Revenue from the Public	—	(146,323)	(146,323)
Total Program Earned Revenue	—	(146,532)	(146,532)
Net Program Income	\$ —	\$ (20,245)	\$ (20,245)
<b>Strategic Goal 3: Create a Flexible Organization Through E-Government and Worldwide Intellectual Property</b>			
Intragovernmental Gross Cost	\$ 15,888	\$ 3,272	\$ 19,160
Gross Cost with the Public	67,159	13,831	80,990
Total Program Cost	83,047	17,103	100,150
Net Cost/(Income) from Operations	\$ 53,300	\$ (3,142)	\$ 50,158
<b>Total Entity</b>			
Total Program Cost (Notes 11 and 12)	\$ 1,145,791	\$ 143,390	\$ 1,289,181
Total Earned Revenue	(1,092,491)	(146,532)	(1,239,023)
Net Cost/(Income) of Operations	\$ 53,300	\$ (3,142)	\$ 50,158

Intragovernmental expenses relate to the source of the goods or services, not the classification of the related revenue.

## NOTE 11. PROGRAM COSTS

Program costs consist of both costs related directly to the individual business lines and overall support costs allocated to the business lines. All costs are assigned to specific programs. Total program or operating costs for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004 by cost category were as follows:

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005			2004
	Direct	Allocated	Total	Total
Personnel Services and Benefits	\$ 726,540	\$ 75,673	\$ 802,213	\$ 745,152
Travel and Transportation	663	5,649	6,312	5,425
Rent, Communications, and Utilities	90,993	37,363	128,356	106,210
Printing and Reproduction	69,695	388	70,083	73,159
Contractual Services	179,337	114,505	293,842	262,523
Training	2,727	1,154	3,881	1,266
Maintenance and Repairs	11,038	31,896	42,934	20,834
Supplies and Materials	7,234	1,578	8,812	7,609
Equipment not Capitalized	7,691	4,821	12,512	11,459
Insurance Claims and Indemnities	—	—	—	(29)
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on Asset Dispositions	32,208	22,875	55,083	55,573
Total Program Costs	\$ 1,128,126	\$ 295,902	\$ 1,424,028	\$ 1,289,181

The unfunded portion of personnel services and benefits for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004 was \$801 thousand and \$2,372 thousand, respectively.

## NOTE 12. PROGRAM COSTS BY CATEGORY AND RESPONSIBILITY SEGMENT

The program costs for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004 by cost category and business line were as follows:

(Dollars in Thousands)	2005			2004		
	Patent	Trademark	Total	Patent	Trademark	Total
<b>Direct Costs</b>						
Personnel Services and Benefits	\$ 646,517	\$ 80,023	\$ 726,540	\$ 603,616	\$ 72,571	\$ 676,187
Travel and Transportation	597	66	663	364	64	428
Rent, Communications, and Utilities	82,578	8,415	90,993	76,313	8,906	85,219
Printing and Reproduction	68,888	807	69,695	71,757	1,197	72,954
Contractual Services	156,111	23,226	179,337	150,376	22,267	172,643
Training	2,518	209	2,727	639	30	669
Maintenance and Repairs	8,923	2,115	11,038	8,048	2,029	10,077
Supplies and Materials	6,826	408	7,234	6,776	418	7,194
Equipment not Capitalized	6,799	892	7,691	5,585	1,846	7,431
Insurance Claims and Indemnities	—	—	—	(31)	—	(31)
Depreciation, Amortization, or Loss on						
Asset Dispositions	26,131	6,077	32,208	32,468	4,926	37,394
<b>Subtotal Direct Costs</b>	<b>1,005,888</b>	<b>122,238</b>	<b>1,128,126</b>	<b>955,911</b>	<b>114,254</b>	<b>1,070,165</b>
<b>Allocated Costs</b>						
Automation	106,530	19,593	126,123	82,854	14,333	97,187
Resource Management	140,709	29,070	169,779	107,026	14,803	121,829
<b>Subtotal Allocated Costs</b>	<b>247,239</b>	<b>48,663</b>	<b>295,902</b>	<b>189,880</b>	<b>29,136</b>	<b>219,016</b>
<b>Total Program Costs</b>	<b>\$ 1,253,127</b>	<b>\$ 170,901</b>	<b>\$ 1,424,028</b>	<b>\$ 1,145,791</b>	<b>\$ 143,390</b>	<b>\$ 1,289,181</b>

The unfunded portion of personnel services and benefits for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004 was \$801 thousand and \$2,372 thousand, respectively.



## NOTE 13. FUTURE FUNDING REQUIREMENTS

The Consolidated Statement of Financing provides information on the total resources used by an agency, both those received through budgetary resources and those received through other means during the reporting period. The statement reconciles these resources with the net cost of operations by (1) removing resources that do not fund net cost of operations and (2) including components of net cost of operations that did not generate or use resources during the year.

The relationship between the amounts reported as liabilities not covered by budgetary resources as shown in Note 5, Liabilities, and the amounts reported as components requiring or generating resources in future periods on the Statement of Financing were analyzed. The differences are primarily due to budgetary offsetting collections that do not affect net cost of operations, which consists of the change in unfilled customer orders with advance.

For the year ended September 30, 2005, future funding requirements were as follows:

**(Dollars in Thousands)**

Liabilities not Covered by Budgetary Resources as of 9/30/2004	\$ 634,129
Unobligated Balance Used to Cover Unfunded Liabilities	2,363
Unfunded Liabilities as of 9/30/2004	\$ 636,492
Liabilities not Covered by Budgetary Resources as of 9/30/2005	\$ 764,509
Unobligated Balance Used to Cover Unfunded Liabilities	5,728
Unfunded Liabilities as of 9/30/2005	\$ 770,237
Increase in Unfunded Liabilities	\$ 133,745
Costs that will be Funded by Resources in Future Periods	\$ 3,647
Resources that Fund Costs Recognized in Prior Periods	(360)
Budgetary Offsetting Collections that do not Affect Net Cost of Operations	130,458
Increase in Future Funding Requirements	\$ 133,745

For the year ended September 30, 2004, future funding requirements were as follows:

**(Dollars in Thousands)**

Liabilities not Covered by Budgetary Resources as of 9/30/2003	\$ 555,931
Unobligated Balance Used to Cover Unfunded Liabilities	3,540
Unfunded Liabilities as of 9/30/2003	\$ 559,471
Liabilities not Covered by Budgetary Resources as of 9/30/2004	\$ 634,129
Unobligated Balance Used to Cover Unfunded Liabilities	2,363
Unfunded Liabilities as of 9/30/2004	\$ 636,492
Increase in Unfunded Liabilities	\$ 77,021
Costs that will be Funded by Resources in Future Periods	\$ 2,510
Resources that Fund Costs Recognized in Prior Periods	(138)
Budgetary Offsetting Collections that do not Affect Net Cost of Operations	74,649
Increase in Future Funding Requirements	\$ 77,021

## NOTE 14. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

### Commitments

In addition to the future lease commitments discussed in Note 8, the USPTO is obligated for the purchase of goods and services that have been ordered, but not yet received. Total undelivered orders for all of the USPTO's activities were \$281,995 thousand and \$214,546 thousand as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, respectively. Of these amounts, \$273,635 thousand and \$203,014 thousand, respectively, were unpaid.

### Contingencies

The USPTO is a party to various routine administrative proceedings, legal actions, and claims brought by or against it, including threatened or pending litigation involving labor relations claims, some of which may ultimately result in settlements or decisions against the federal government. As of September 30, 2005, management expects it is reasonably possible that three cases involving employment or labor relations claims may ultimately result in an adverse decision and require payment of awards or damages where the outcomes are expected to be less than \$825 thousand. In addition, a discrimination class action suit outcome is considered reasonably possible, but a range of outcomes cannot be determined. In September 2005, a grievance was ruled in favor of a terminated employee. The employee has returned to work. The USPTO will be liable for lost wages offset by outside earnings. Information is not available to prepare an estimate, however the liability will not exceed \$350 thousand.

Additionally, the USPTO may be required to make contributions to the Judgment Fund. For the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004, there were no payments made on the USPTO's behalf from the Judgment Fund.

# Required Supplementary Information







## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

As of September 30, 2005 and 2004

### Intragovernmental Assets: (Dollars in Thousands)

Trading Partner	2005				2004
	Fund Balance with Treasury	Accounts Receivable, Net	Advances and Prepayments	Total	Total
04 U.S. Government Printing Office	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,912	\$ 1,912	\$ 2,238
12 Department of Agriculture	-	50	-	50	-
13 Department of Commerce	-	-	817	817	494
20 Department of Treasury	1,240,798	-	-	1,240,798	1,135,268
47 General Services Administration	-	-	-	-	3,638
68 Environmental Protection Agency	-	-	-	-	35
Total	\$ 1,240,798	\$ 50	\$ 2,729	\$ 1,243,577	\$ 1,141,673

### Intragovernmental Liabilities: (Dollars in Thousands)

Trading Partner	2005				2004	
	Accounts Payable	Accrued Payroll and Benefits	Accrued Post-employment Compensation	Customer Deposit Accounts	Total	Total
03 Library of Congress	\$ 210	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 210	\$ 205
04 Government Printing Office	275	-	-	-	275	105
11 Executive Office of the President	211	-	-	-	211	220
12 Department of Agriculture	17	-	-	161	178	229
13 Department of Commerce	114	-	-	131	245	211
14 Department of Interior	1	-	-	67	68	31
15 Department of Justice	3	-	-	11	14	272
16 Department of Labor	52	-	1,367	-	1,419	1,574
17 Department of the Navy	-	-	-	1,565	1,565	1,536
18 United States Postal Service	-	-	-	13	13	30
19 Department of State	328	-	-	-	328	63
20 Department of Treasury	4	-	-	-	4	7
21 Department of the Army	-	-	-	633	633	543
24 Office of Personnel Management	219	3,878	-	-	4,097	3,298
36 Department of Veterans Affairs	95	-	-	-	95	193
45 U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission	1	-	-	-	1	2
47 General Services Administration	2,834	-	-	-	2,834	208
57 Department of the Air Force	-	-	-	301	301	199
68 Environmental Protection Agency	51	-	-	82	133	159
69 Department of Transportation	-	-	-	3	3	4
75 Health and Human Services	528	-	-	34	562	219
80 National Aeronautics and Space Administration	-	-	-	333	333	220
88 National Archives and Records Administration	167	-	-	-	167	21
89 Department of Energy	-	-	-	858	858	988
96 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers	-	-	-	9	9	4
97 Department of Defense	53	-	-	29	82	36
99 Treasury General Fund	-	1,531	-	-	1,531	1,179
Total	\$ 5,163	\$ 5,409	\$ 1,367	\$ 4,230	\$ 16,169	\$ 11,756

**Intragovernmental Earned Revenue:  
 (Dollars in Thousands)**

<b>Trading Partner</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2004</b>
12 Department of Agriculture	\$ 342	\$ 285
13 Department of Commerce	61	54
14 Department of Interior	7	12
15 Department of Justice	8	5
17 Department of the Navy	1,505	1,367
18 United States Postal Service	150	136
19 Department of State	350	106
21 Department of the Army	846	831
24 Office of Personnel Management	104	-
47 General Services Administration	141	98
49 National Science Foundation	37	31
57 Department of the Air Force	341	275
68 Environmental Protection Agency	94	192
69 Department of Transportation	-	4
75 Department of Health and Human Services	4	2
80 National Aeronautics and Space Administration	617	587
89 Department of Energy	1,345	1,293
96 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers	71	81
97 Department of Defense	85	68
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 6,108</b>	<b>\$ 5,427</b>

**Gross Costs that Generated Intragovernmental Earned Revenue:  
 (Dollars in Thousands)**

<b>Budget Functional Classification</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2004</b>
376 Other Advancement of Commerce	\$ 6,272	\$ 5,647
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 6,272</b>	<b>\$ 5,647</b>

The USPTO has not deferred to a future period maintenance on the property and equipment presented on the Balance Sheet as of September 30, 2005 and 2004.









**UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**  
**The Inspector General**  
Washington, D.C. 20230

NOV - 7 2005

MEMORANDUM FOR: Jon W. Dudas  
Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and  
Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

FROM: Johnnie E. Frazier

SUBJECT: *USPTO's FY 2005 Financial Statements*  
Audit Report No. FSD-17434-6-0001

I am pleased to provide you with the attached audit report, which presents an unqualified opinion on the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office's FY2005 financial statements. The audit results indicate that the USPTO has established an internal control structure that facilitates the preparation of reliable financial and performance information. We commend the USPTO for the noteworthy accomplishment of attaining an unqualified opinion for the 13<sup>th</sup> consecutive year, and for meeting the fiscal year 2005 accelerated reporting deadline.

My office contracted with the independent public accounting firm of KPMG LLP (KPMG) to perform the audit of the USPTO's financial statements as of and for the year ended September 30, 2005. The contract required that the audit be done in accordance with U.S. generally accepted government auditing standards and OMB Bulletin 01-02, *Audit Requirements for Federal Financial Statements*.

In its audit of the USPTO, KPMG found that:

- the financial statements were fairly presented, in all material respects and in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles;
- there were no material weaknesses in internal control, as defined on page 2 of the audit report;
- there were no instances in which the USPTO's financial management systems did not substantially comply with the requirements of the Federal Financial Management Improvement Act of 1996, and no instances of noncompliance with other laws and regulations tested.

My office defined the audit's scope and oversaw its performance and delivery. We reviewed KPMG's report and related documentation, and made inquiries of its representatives. Our review disclosed no instances where KPMG did not comply, in all material respects, with U.S. generally accepted government auditing standards. However, our review, as differentiated from an audit in accordance with U.S. generally accepted government auditing standards, was



not intended to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the USPTO's financial statements, conclusions about the effectiveness of internal control, or conclusions on compliance with laws and regulations. KPMG is responsible for the attached audit report dated November 2, 2005, and the conclusions expressed in the report.

If you wish to discuss the contents of this report, please call me on (202) 482-4661, or Edward Blansitt, Deputy Inspector General, on (202) 482-3516. We appreciate the cooperation and courtesies the USPTO extended to KPMG and my staff during the audit.

Attachment

cc: Howard N. Goldberg  
Acting Chief Financial Officer  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

Otto J. Wolff  
Chief Financial Officer and Assistant Secretary for Administration  
Department of Commerce



**KPMG LLP**  
2001 M Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20036

## Independent Auditors' Report

Office of Inspector General, U.S. Department of Commerce and  
Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and  
Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office:

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), an agency within the U.S. Department of Commerce, as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, and the related consolidated statements of net cost, changes in net position, financing, and cash flows, and the combined statement of budgetary resources, for the years then ended. The objective of our audits was to express an opinion on the fair presentation of these financial statements. In connection with our audits, we also considered the USPTO's internal control over financial reporting and tested the USPTO's compliance with certain provisions of applicable laws, regulations, and contracts that could have a direct and material effect on these financial statements.

### SUMMARY

As stated in our opinion on the financial statements, we concluded that the USPTO's financial statements as of and for the years ended September 30, 2005 and 2004, are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Our consideration of internal control over financial reporting would not necessarily disclose all matters in the internal control over financial reporting that might be material weaknesses under standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. However, we noted no matters involving the internal control and its operation that we considered to be material weaknesses.

The results of our tests of compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, and contracts disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported herein under *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, and Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Bulletin No. 01-02, *Audit Requirements for Federal Financial Statements*.

The following sections discuss our opinion on the USPTO's financial statements, our consideration of the USPTO's internal control over financial reporting, our tests of the USPTO's compliance with certain provisions of applicable laws, regulations, and contracts, and management's and our responsibilities.

### OPINION ON THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, and the related consolidated statements of net cost, changes in net position, financing, and cash flows, and the combined statement of budgetary resources, for the years then ended.





In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the USPTO as of September 30, 2005 and 2004, and its net costs, changes in net position, budgetary resources, and reconciliation of net costs to budgetary obligations, and cash flows for the years then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

The information in Management's Discussion and Analysis and Required Supplementary Information sections is not a required part of the financial statements, but is supplementary information required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America or OMB Circular A-136, *Financial Reporting Requirements, Part A, Form and Content of the Performance and Accountability Report*. We have applied certain limited procedures, which consisted principally of inquiries of management regarding the methods of measurement and presentation of this information. However, we did not audit this information and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

Our audits were conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. The Management and Performance Challenges Identified by the Inspector General and Other Accompanying Information on pages 107 to 148, are an integral part of the USPTO's *Fiscal Year 2005 Performance and Accountability Report*. However, this information is not a required part of the financial statements and is presented for purposes of additional analysis. This information has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audits of the financial statements and, accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

#### **INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL REPORTING**

Our consideration of internal control over financial reporting would not necessarily disclose all matters in the internal control over financial reporting that might be material weaknesses under standards issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Material weaknesses are conditions in which the design or operation of one or more of the internal control components does not reduce to a relatively low level the risk that misstatements, in amounts that would be material in relation to the financial statements being audited, may occur and not be detected within a timely period by employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions. However, we noted no matters involving the internal control and its operation that we considered to be material weaknesses as defined above.

\* \* \* \* \*

However, we noted other matters that we reported to the management of the USPTO in two separate letters addressing information technology and other matters, respectively.

#### **COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS**

The results of our tests of compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, and contracts, as described in the Responsibilities section of this report, exclusive of those referred to in *Federal Financial Management Improvement Act of 1996* (FFMIA), disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported herein under *Government Auditing Standards* or OMB Bulletin No. 01-02.

The results of our tests of FFMIA disclosed no instances in which the USPTO's financial management systems did not substantially comply with the three requirements discussed in the Responsibilities section of this report.







## RESPONSIBILITIES

### Management's Responsibilities

The *Government Management Reform Act of 1994*, *Accountability of Tax Dollars Act*, and *Government Corporation Control Act* require agencies to report annually to Congress on their financial status and any other information needed to fairly present their financial position and results of operations. To meet these reporting requirements, the USPTO prepares and submits financial statements in accordance with Part A of OMB Circular A-136.

Management is responsible for the financial statements, including:

- Preparing the financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America;
- Preparing the Management's Discussion and Analysis (including the performance measures), and Required Supplementary Information;
- Establishing and maintaining internal controls over financial reporting; and
- Complying with laws, regulations, and contracts, including FFMIA.

In fulfilling this responsibility, management is required to make estimates and judgments to assess the expected benefits and related costs of internal control policies. Because of inherent limitations in internal control, misstatements due to error or fraud may nevertheless occur and not be detected.

### Auditors' Responsibilities

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the fiscal year 2005 and 2004 financial statements of the USPTO based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, and OMB Bulletin No. 01-02. Those standards and OMB Bulletin No. 01-02 require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the USPTO's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

An audit also includes:

- Examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements;
- Assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management; and
- Evaluating the overall financial statement presentation.

We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In planning and performing our fiscal year 2005 audit, we considered the USPTO's internal control over financial reporting by obtaining an understanding of the USPTO's internal control, determining whether internal controls had been placed in operation, assessing control risk, and performing tests of controls in order to determine our auditing procedures for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements. We limited our internal control testing to those controls necessary to achieve the objectives



described in *Government Auditing Standards* and OMB Bulletin No. 01-02. We did not test all internal controls relevant to operating objectives as broadly defined by the *Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act of 1982*. The objective of our audit was not to provide assurance on the USPTO's internal control over financial reporting. Consequently, we do not provide an opinion thereon.

As required by OMB Bulletin No. 01-02, in our fiscal year 2005 audit, with respect to internal control related to performance measures determined by management to be key and reported in the Management's Discussion and Analysis and Performance sections, we obtained an understanding of the design of significant internal controls relating to the existence and completeness assertions. Our procedures were not designed to provide assurance on internal control over reported performance measures and, accordingly, we do not provide an opinion thereon.

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the USPTO's fiscal year 2005 financial statements are free of material misstatement, we performed tests of the USPTO's compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, and contracts noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts, and certain provisions of other laws and regulations specified in OMB Bulletin No. 01-02, including certain provisions referred to in FFMIA. We limited our tests of compliance to the provisions described in the preceding sentence, and we did not test compliance with all laws, regulations, and contracts applicable to the USPTO. However, providing an opinion on compliance with laws, regulations, and contracts was not an objective of our audit and, accordingly, we do not express such an opinion.

Under OMB Bulletin No. 01-02 and FFMIA, we are required to report whether the USPTO's financial management systems substantially comply with (1) Federal financial management systems requirements, (2) applicable Federal accounting standards, and (3) the United States Government Standard General Ledger at the transaction level. To meet this requirement, we performed tests of compliance with FFMIA Section 803(a) requirements.

#### **DISTRIBUTION**

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the USPTO's management, the U.S. Department of Commerce's Office of Inspector General, OMB, the Government Accountability Office, and the U.S. Congress and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

**KPMG LLP**

November 2, 2005







## **INSPECTOR GENERAL'S STATEMENT SUMMARIZING THE MAJOR MANAGEMENT AND PERFORMANCE CHALLENGES FACING THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

Jon W. Dudas

Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property

Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

**W**e are providing the management challenges for the United States Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) in accordance with the provisions of the Reports Consolidation Act of 2000 (PL 106-531). Detailed information about our work is available on our website at: <http://www.oig.doc.gov/>.

### **Enhance the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office's Ability to Manage and Operate Its Own Processes**

Our work at USPTO continues to focus on critical aspects of its functioning as a performance-based organization as the agency implements budget, procurement, and personnel operations that provide the flexibility to adapt to changing market forces and meet the needs of customers. Our previous work at USPTO assessed patent examiner production goals, performance appraisal plans and awards, the agency's move to its new headquarters complex, and reports of improper personnel practices. (See September 2004 Semiannual Report to Congress, pages 38-40.)

This latter issue has been long-standing. Since 1999 we have received repeated complaints that management of USPTO's Office of Human Resources (OHR) has allowed or encouraged unfair personnel practices and activities that undermine the integrity of that office and of USPTO in general. Our work in response to the complaints confirmed numerous problems. Resolution of these issues is particularly critical: USPTO has received authority to hire hundreds of examiners. It must have an effective HR operation that adheres to federal regulations, is guided by sound policies and procedures, and affords all employees the rights and protections required by law.

During this semiannual period, we reemphasized this point to senior Department and USPTO officials, noting several issues identified at USPTO that remain unresolved. These include the need to uphold merit system principles, establish human resource policies and procedures to guide decision-making, and ensure those policies and procedures are followed. In addition, the agency's HR staff needs appropriate training in the Standards of Ethical Conduct for Employees of the Executive Branch. It is imperative that USPTO bring stability to its human resources operation and ensure that its employees have the appropriate skills and experience to perform the jobs to which they are assigned.

To its credit, the bureau has taken action to address the problems OIG found in the past. In early 2005, the Office of General Counsel conducted an ethics training course for USPTO's human resources department. Subsequently, USPTO split the position of chief financial officer and chief administrative officer into two positions, each with its own organization, and hired experienced human resources professionals to be OHR director and deputy director, rather than continuing to rely on detailing other staff to those positions. USPTO also created a Comprehensive Human Capital Improvement Plan intended to address long-standing problems in human resources.

While we are pleased that USPTO has been receptive to our recommendations and has implemented numerous changes, the problems we identified are serious and long-standing. The actions PTO has taken to date are strong steps in the right direction, but the ultimate resolution of these issues will require the sustained commitment of senior management.



Johnnie E. Frazier  
Inspector General

# Other Accompanying Information







## THE NATURE OF THE TRAINING PROVIDED TO USPTO EXAMINERS

---

**A**chieving organizational excellence demands a high performance workforce that delivers high quality work products and provides customer service excellence. Training is a critical component in achieving consistently high quality products and services.

Patent examiners and Trademark examining attorneys received extensive legal, technical and automation training in FY 2005. The USPTO has a comprehensive training program for new patent examiners and trademark examining attorneys, embedding a well-established curriculum including initial legal training, automation training and training in examination practice and procedure. Automation training is provided to all examiners on an as-needed basis; more than 260 automation classes were conducted on Patent examination tools. New technology-specific legal and technical training was conducted throughout the examining operations. This specific training either focuses on practices particular to a technology or was developed to address training needs identified through Patent and Trademark examination reviews or staff requests.

The USPTO training staff works one-on-one with the Patent and Trademark business units to address specific training concerns and serve as consultants to design specific internal programs to fit the education needs of each business unit. Training is reviewed and evaluated on an ongoing basis to ensure it is up-to-date and that coursework reflects developments and changes that have taken place in the industry. In FY 2005, the USPTO continued to expand training opportunities by developing additional computer based training and instructional videos.

In FY 2005 in the Trademark organization, data gathered from the results of quality reviews were analyzed and used to prepare the content of online e-learning training materials for trademark examining attorneys. Seven e-learning modules have been developed in Trademarks.

- Concurrent User Applications (released)
- Section 2(d) - Likelihood of Confusion - Weak and Diluted Marks (released)
- Section 2(a): Scandalous and Disparaging Marks (released)
- Amendments to Goods and Services - Are They Within The Scope? (released)
- Section 2(d) - Likelihood of Confusion - Relatedness of Goods and Services: A General Framework (completed, not released)
- Section 2(d) - Likelihood of Confusion - Relatedness of Goods and Services: Evidence (completed, not released)
- Section 2(d) - Likelihood of Confusion - Relatedness of Goods and Services: Food and Beverages Goods and Services (completed, not released)

Reviewers continue to gather data regarding dozens of examination issues on each file they review. In FY 2005, the Patent organization developed a database for the management of review findings that will provide managers with ready access to review results to better identify training needs and assist individual examiners in gaining enhanced skills and improving quality.

**PATENT EXAMINER TRAINING**

**Procedural Training** – Mandatory for all first year examiners

Patent Examiner Initial Training and Introduction to Practice and Procedures

Standardized training is provided to new patent examiners to teach them the basic skills and knowledge of the patent process, and practices and procedures such that they will be able to successfully examine a patent application. The examiner will also be able to provide an initial report to their supervisor on what is the claimed, as well as the disclosed invention contained in the application so as to permit him or her to perform a prior art search. The number of courses offered each year is based on the projected number of new examiners entering the patent business unit.

**Legal Training** – Mandatory for all first year examiners

Practice and Procedures Lectures covering the following topics:

- “Novelty” Requirements
- “Non-Obviousness” Requirements
- “Utility” Requirements
- Restriction Practice
- Unity of Invention
- Double Patenting
- Allowance and Issue
- Appeals

**Continuing Education** – Courses are for students from all Technology Centers, some taught by TC personnel, some modified to include TC specific examples

- Review of Recent Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit Decisions
- Claim Interpretation
- Update on Rule Changes
- Rule Changes – Strategic Plan Rule Package
- Federal Circuit Decisions Affecting USPTO Practice: Key Cases of the Past Year
- Search Strategy

**Legal Training** – Technology Center Level courses taught by TC personnel, some developed within the TCs

Examples include:

- 101 Training
- 102/103 Training
- Obviousness Type Double Patenting

**Legal Training** – Legal Courses

- Patent Law & Evidence

**Examiner Technical Training (Technology Center Focused)**

- Technology Fairs
- Biotechnology
- Computer Software and Hardware
- Optics, Semiconductor, Electrical Engineering
- Communication Technology
- Service Oriented Architecture (SOA)
- Knowledge Management
- Modern Processor Design
- Understanding Mobile Internet
- Understanding Emerging Wireless Technologies

PATENT EXAMINER TRAINING <i>Continued</i>	
<b>Non-Duty Technical Training Program</b>	Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mathematical Methods for Physics</li> </ul>
<b>Automation Training</b>  <i>All first year examiners are provided mandatory initial automation training.</i>	Examples: IFW Classes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ IFW for Examiners (eDAN)</li> <li>■ IFW for Technical Support Staff (MADRAS)</li> <li>■ IFW for Coordinating Committee</li> <li>■ IFW Messaging for Supervisory Patent Examiners</li> <li>■ IFW Refresher Course</li> </ul> Non-IFW Classes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Classification Data System Desktop Training</li> <li>■ ChemDraw</li> <li>■ Examiner Automated Search System (EAST) 1.3: New Features</li> <li>■ EAST and Bibliographic Retrieval System: The Fundamentals</li> <li>■ Office Action Correspondence System (OACS) 1.3: New Features</li> <li>■ OACS Basics</li> <li>■ OACS for Non-Typists</li> <li>■ OACS: Creating Personal Forms</li> <li>■ Chemical Searching for Non-chemists</li> <li>■ West: Refresher</li> <li>■ Microsoft® PowerPoint</li> <li>■ Microsoft® Outlook</li> <li>■ PALMExpo Overview</li> </ul> TC-Focused Classes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ EAST Databases</li> <li>■ EAST: Automated Searching for Design Examiners</li> <li>■ EAST and Optical Character Recognition</li> <li>■ OACS Basics for Design Examiners</li> <li>■ Non-Patent Literature (NPL) Web Resources in Your Art Area</li> <li>■ Classification and Security Review</li> <li>■ Obviousness Type Double Patenting</li> <li>■ Means Plus Function Claims (35 USC § 112)</li> </ul>
<b>Management Training</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Review of Recent Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit Decisions</li> <li>■ Claim Interpretation</li> <li>■ Update on Rule Changes</li> </ul>



**TRADEMARK EXAMINING ATTORNEY TRAINING****Trademark Organization Training and Learning**

**Legal Training** – mandatory for all first year trademark-examining attorneys.

This course provides new trademark attorneys with basic knowledge of the Federal Trademark Act, examination procedures and automated search tools. Lectures and Activities cover the following topics:

- Trademark Law Overview
- Refusals under Section 2(d) of Trademark Act (Likelihood of Confusion)
- Refusals under Section 2(e)(1) of Trademark Act  
(Mere Descriptiveness/Deceptively Misdescriptive)
- Refusals under Section 2(e)(2) of Trademark Act (Geographically Descriptive)
- Refusals under Section 2(e)(3) of Trademark Act (Geographically Deceptively Misdescriptive)
- Refusals under Section 2(e)(4) of Trademark Act (Primarily Merely Surname)
- Refusals under Section 2(e)(5) of the Trademark Act (Functionality)
- Requirements for Intent-to-Use Applications
- Requirements for Use-Based Applications
- Specimens and Use-Based Refusals
- Requirements for Applications filed under Section 44 of the Trademark Act
- Madrid Protocol Practice - Requirements for Applications filed under Section 66(a) of the Trademark Act
- Identification and Classification of Goods and Services Practice
- Legal Writing
- Drawing Requirements
- Options Practice – Section 2(f) of Trademark Act and Supplemental Register
- Disclaimer Requirements
- Evidence Practice
- Refusals under Sections 2(a), (b) and (c) of Trademark Act
- Legal Research
- Ex Parte Appeal Practice Before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board

**Automation Training**

- PTOnet System and Applications
- X-Search Automated Trademark Search System
- FAST – First Action System for Trademarks

## FISCAL YEAR 2005 USPTO WORKLOAD TABLES

Index of Tables	Page
Table 1 Summary of Patent Examining Activities	118
Table 2 Patent Applications Filed	119
Table 3 Patent Applications Pending Prior to Allowance	120
Table 4 Patent Pendency Statistics	121
Table 5 Summary of Total Pending Patent Applications	122
Table 6 Patents Issued	123
Table 7 Patent Applications Filed by Residents of the United States	124
Table 8 Patents Issued to Residents of the United States	125
Table 9 United States Patent Applications Filed by Residents of Foreign Countries	126
Table 10 Patents Issued by the United States to Residents of Foreign Countries	128
Table 11 Statutory Invention Registrations (SIRs) Published	129
Table 12 United States Government Agency Patents	130
Table 13a Ex Parte Reexamination	131
Table 13b Inter Partes Reexamination	131
Table 14 Summary of Contested Patent Cases	132
Table 15 Summary of Trademark Examining Activities	133
Table 16 Trademark Applications Filed for Registration and Renewal and Trademark Affidavits Filed	134
Table 17 Summary of Pending Trademark Applications	135
Table 18 Trademarks Registered, Renewed, and Published Under Section 12(C)	136
Table 19 Trademark Applications Filed by Residents of the United States	137
Table 20 Trademarks Registered to Residents of the United States	138
Table 21 Trademark Applications Filed by Residents of Foreign Countries	139
Table 22 Trademarks Registered to Residents of Foreign Countries	141
Table 23 Summary of Contested Trademark Cases	143
Table 24 Actions on Petitions to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks	144
Table 25 Cases in Litigation	145
Table 26 Patent Classification Activity	146
Table 27 Scientific and Technical Information Center Activity	147
Table 28 End of Year Personnel	148

**TABLE 1**

**SUMMARY OF PATENT EXAMINING ACTIVITIES**  
*(As of September 30 of each fiscal year)*

PATENT EXAMINING ACTIVITY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Applications filed, total<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>344,717</b>	<b>353,394</b>	<b>355,418</b>	<b>378,984</b>	<b>409,532</b>
Utility <sup>2</sup>	324,211	331,580	331,729	353,319	381,797
Reissue	956	974	938	996	1,143
Plant	914	1,134	785	1,212	1,288
Design	18,636	19,706	21,966	23,457	25,304
<b>Provisional Applications Filed<sup>1,3</sup></b>	<b>86,123</b>	<b>89,537</b>	<b>92,517</b>	<b>102,268</b>	<b>111,753</b>
<b>First actions</b>					
Design	17,748	19,029	19,013	17,328	20,108
Utility, Plant, and Reissue	241,770	275,054	283,111	288,315	297,287
PCT/Chapter	17,972	19,460	23,277	17,935	22,795
<b>Patent application disposals, total</b>	<b>257,467</b>	<b>279,297</b>	<b>303,635</b>	<b>304,921</b>	<b>298,838</b>
<b>Allowed patent applications, total</b>	<b>183,394</b>	<b>189,191</b>	<b>205,879</b>	<b>195,611</b>	<b>182,254</b>
Design	16,526	17,377	17,596	16,262	18,161
Utility, Plant, and Reissue	166,868	171,814	188,283	179,349	164,093
<b>Abandoned, total</b>	<b>74,014</b>	<b>90,092</b>	<b>97,745</b>	<b>109,295</b>	<b>116,564</b>
Design	1,448	1,675	1,569	1,471	1,332
Utility, Plant, and Reissue	72,566	88,417	96,176	107,824	115,232
<b>Statutory invention registration disposals, total</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>PCT/Chapter II examinations completed</b>	<b>18,859</b>	<b>16,456</b>	<b>21,005</b>	<b>19,439</b>	<b>12,594</b>
<b>Applications Published<sup>4</sup></b>	<b>25,359</b>	<b>169,729</b>	<b>243,007</b>	<b>248,561</b>	<b>291,221</b>
<b>Patents issued<sup>5</sup></b>	<b>187,822</b>	<b>177,317</b>	<b>189,597</b>	<b>187,170</b>	<b>165,485</b>
Utility	169,576	160,843	171,500	169,296	151,079
Reissue	504	466	394	343	195
Plant	563	912	1,178	998	816
Design	17,179	15,096	16,525	16,533	13,395
Pendency time of average patent application <sup>6</sup>	24.7	24.0	26.7	27.6	29.1
Reexamination certificates issued	287	200	193	138	223
PCT international applications received by USPTO as receiving office	43,322	42,889	42,969	45,396	46,926
National requirements received by USPTO as designated/elected office	26,821	29,846	32,753	37,173	39,385
Patents renewed under Public Law (P.L.) 102-204 <sup>7</sup> (Preliminary)	205,117	194,143	253,475	269,815	268,935
Patents expired under P.L. 102-204 <sup>7</sup> (Preliminary)	49,077	53,724	57,770	63,552	67,534

<sup>1</sup> FY 2004 data has been updated with final end of year numbers.

<sup>2</sup> Utility patents include chemical, electrical and mechanical applications.

<sup>3</sup> Provisional applications provided for in P.L. 103-465.

<sup>4</sup> Eighteen-month publication of patent applications provided for in the American Inventors Protection Act of 1999, P.L. 106-113.

<sup>5</sup> Excludes withdrawn numbers.

<sup>6</sup> Average time (in months) between filing and issuance or abandonment of utility, plant, and reissue applications. This average does not include design patents.

<sup>7</sup> The provisions of P.L. 102-204 regarding the renewal of patents superseded P.L. 96-517 and P.L. 97-247.

**TABLE 2**

**PATENT APPLICATIONS FILED  
(FY 1985 - FY 2005)**

Year	Utility	Design	Plant	Reissue	Total
1985	115,893	9,504	244	290	125,931
1986	120,988	9,792	291	332	131,403
1987	125,677	10,766	364	366	137,173
1988	136,253	11,114	377	439	148,183
1989	150,418	11,975	418	495	163,306
1990	162,708	11,140	395	468	174,711
1991	166,765	10,368	414	536	178,083
1992	171,623	12,907	335	581	185,446
1993	173,619	13,546	362	572	188,099
1994	185,087	15,431	430	606	201,554
1995	220,141	15,375	516	647	236,679
1996	189,922	15,160	557	637	206,276
1997	219,486	16,272	680	607	237,045
1998	238,850	16,576	658	582	256,666
1999	259,618	17,227	759	664	278,268
2000	291,653	18,563	786	805	311,807
2001	324,211	18,636	914	956	344,717
2002	331,580	19,706	1,134	974	353,394
2003	331,729	21,966	785	938	355,418
2004 <sup>1</sup>	353,319	23,457	1,212	996	378,984
<b>2005</b>	<b>381,797</b>	<b>25,304</b>	<b>1,288</b>	<b>1,143</b>	<b>409,532</b>

<sup>1</sup> Revised to reflect final FY 2004 data.



**TABLE 3****PATENT APPLICATIONS PENDING PRIOR TO ALLOWANCE<sup>1</sup>**  
**(FY 1985 - FY 2005)**

Year	Awaiting action by examiner	Total applications pending <sup>2</sup>
1985	90,648	215,512
1986	80,547	207,774
1987	65,010	209,911
1988	75,678	215,280
1989	92,377	222,755
1990	104,179	244,964
1991	104,086	254,507
1992	112,201	269,596
1993	99,904	244,646
1994	107,824	261,249
1995	124,275	298,522
1996	139,943	303,720
1997	112,430	275,295
1998	224,446	379,484
1999	243,207	414,837
2000	308,056	485,129
2001	355,779	542,007
2002	433,691	636,530
2003	471,382	674,691
2004	528,685	756,604
<b>2005</b>	<b>611,114</b>	<b>885,002</b>

<sup>1</sup> Includes patents pending at end of period indicated, and includes utility, reissue, plant, and design applications. Does not include allowed applications.

<sup>2</sup> Applications under examination, including those in preexamination processing.

**TABLE 4**

**PATENT PENDENCY STATISTICS  
(FY 2005)**

UPR Pendency Statistics by Technology Center (in months)	Average First Action Pendency	Total Average Pendency
Total UPR Pendency		
Tech Center 1600 - Biotechnology & Organic Chemistry	23.0	32.3
Tech Center 1700 - Chemical & Materials Engineering	19.7	29.7
Tech Center 2100 - Computer Architecture, Software & Information Security	32.7	43.5
Tech Center 2600 - Communications	30.5	42.3
Tech Center 2800 - Semiconductor, Electrical, Optical Systems & Components	14.5	24.9
Tech Center 3600 - Transportation, Construction, Agriculture, & Electronic Commerce	18.4	26.9
Tech Center 3700 - Mechanical Engineering, Manufacturing & Products	18.3	26.3
Pendency is calculated based on the most recent filing date.		

**TABLE 5**

**SUMMARY OF TOTAL PENDING PATENT APPLICATIONS**

*(As of September 30, 2005)*

Stage of processing	Utility, plant and reissue applications	Design applications	Total patent applications
<b>Pending patent applications, total</b>	<b>931,958</b>	<b>38,098</b>	<b>970,056</b>
<b>In preexamination processing, total</b>	<b>74,254</b>	<b>3,021</b>	<b>77,275</b>
<b>Under examination, total</b>	<b>782,415</b>	<b>24,964</b>	<b>807,379</b>
Undocketed	159,652	4,326	163,978
Awaiting first action by examiner	352,674	17,187	369,861
Rejected, awaiting response by applicant	191,486	2,731	194,217
Amended, awaiting action by examiner	63,572	619	64,191
In interference	361	1	362
On appeal, and other <sup>1</sup>	14,670	100	14,770
<b>In postexamination processing, total</b>	<b>75,289</b>	<b>10,113</b>	<b>85,402</b>
Awaiting issue fee	37,819	4,128	41,947
Awaiting printing <sup>2</sup>	34,396	5,984	40,380
D-10s (secret cases in condition for allowance)	3,074	1	3,075

<sup>1</sup> Includes cases on appeal and undergoing petitions.

<sup>2</sup> Includes withdrawn cases.

**TABLE 6**

**PATENTS ISSUED  
(FY 1985 - FY 2005)**

Year	Utility <sup>1</sup>	Design	Plant	Reissue	Total
1985	69,667	5,058	277	300	75,302
1986	71,301	5,202	227	263	76,993
1987	82,141	6,158	240	254	88,793
1988	77,317	5,740	283	244	83,584
1989	95,831	5,844	728	309	102,712
1990	88,974	7,176	295	282	96,727
1991	91,822	9,386	318	334	101,860
1992	99,405	9,612	336	375	109,728
1993	96,676	9,946	408	302	107,332
1994	101,270	11,138	513	347	113,268
1995	101,895	11,662	390	294	114,241
1996	104,900	11,346	338	291	116,875
1997	111,979	10,331	400	267	122,977
1998	139,298	14,420	577	284	154,579
1999	142,856	15,480	437	393	159,166
2000	164,490	16,719	453	561	182,223
2001	169,576	17,179	563	504	187,822
2002	160,843	15,096	912	466	177,317
2003	171,500	16,525	1,178	394	189,597
2004	169,296	16,533	998	343	187,170
<b>2005</b>	<b>151,079</b>	<b>13,395</b>	<b>816</b>	<b>195</b>	<b>165,485</b>

<sup>1</sup> Includes chemical, electrical, and mechanical applications.



**TABLE 7****PATENT APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES<sup>1</sup>  
(FY 2005)****(PRELIMINARY FOR FY 2005)<sup>2</sup>**

State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>225,152</b>	Kentucky	1,105	Oklahoma	1,005
Alabama	828	Louisiana	724	Oregon	4,595
Alaska	88	Maine	326	Pennsylvania	6,359
Arizona	3,794	Maryland	3,196	Rhode Island	653
Arkansas	363	Massachusetts	9,159	South Carolina	1,156
California	48,568	Michigan	7,217	South Dakota	164
Colorado	4,445	Minnesota	6,379	Tennessee	1,921
Connecticut	3,583	Mississippi	327	Texas	12,951
Delaware	801	Missouri	1,865	Utah	1,822
District of Columbia	184	Montana	333	Vermont	812
Florida	6,862	Nebraska	525	Virginia	2,789
Georgia	3,712	Nevada	1,302	Washington	9,452
Hawaii	194	New Hampshire	1,257	West Virginia	271
Idaho	2,667	New Jersey	7,274	Wisconsin	3,830
Illinois	7,833	New Mexico	868	Wyoming	117
Indiana	2,963	New York	12,521	Puerto Rico	83
Iowa	1,332	North Carolina	4,479	Virgin Islands	9
Kansas	1,194	North Dakota	191	U.S. Pacific Islands <sup>3</sup>	3
		Ohio	6,285	United States <sup>4</sup>	3
				Other <sup>5</sup>	22,413

<sup>1</sup> Data include utility, plant, design, and reissue applications.<sup>2</sup> Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.<sup>3</sup> Represents residents of American Samoa, Guam, and miscellaneous U.S. Pacific Islands.<sup>4</sup> No State indicated in database.<sup>5</sup> State/Territory information not available.

**TABLE 8**

**PATENTS ISSUED TO RESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES<sup>1</sup>  
 (FY 2005)**

State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>85,238</b>	Kentucky	408	Oklahoma	430
Alabama	364	Louisiana	308	Oregon	1,843
Alaska	33	Maine	143	Pennsylvania	2,735
Arizona	1,635	Maryland	1,306	Rhode Island	333
Arkansas	149	Massachusetts	3,443	South Carolina	553
California	19,928	Michigan	3,907	South Dakota	78
Colorado	2,044	Minnesota	2,659	Tennessee	754
Connecticut	1,716	Mississippi	138	Texas	5,660
Delaware	386	Missouri	791	Utah	688
District of Columbia	60	Montana	130	Vermont	439
Florida	2,744	Nebraska	222	Virginia	1,045
Georgia	1,383	Nevada	461	Washington	2,446
Hawaii	64	New Hampshire	569	West Virginia	106
Idaho	1,646	New Jersey	2,978	Wisconsin	1,812
Illinois	3,352	New Mexico	308	Wyoming	60
Indiana	1,303	New York	5,631	Puerto Rico	26
Iowa	650	North Carolina	1,882	Virgin Islands	1
Kansas	509	North Dakota	84	U.S. Pacific Islands <sup>2</sup>	1
		Ohio	2,892	United States <sup>3</sup>	2

<sup>1</sup> Data include utility, plant, design, and reissue patents.

<sup>2</sup> Represents residents of American Samoa, Guam, and miscellaneous U.S. Pacific Islands.

<sup>3</sup> No State indicated in database.

**TABLE 9 UNITED STATES PATENT APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES<sup>1</sup>  
 (FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

**(PRELIMINARY FOR FY 2005)<sup>2</sup>**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>154,205</b>	<b>160,036</b>	<b>158,162</b>	<b>159,504</b>	<b>184,380</b>	Ecuador	8	11	9	5	4
Afghanistan	-	-	-	-	1	Egypt	16	13	13	6	13
Albania	-	-	-	-	1	El Salvador	3	1	2	2	-
Algeria	2	-	1	-	2	EPO	-	-	-	-	-
Andorra	3	3	2	1	1	Equatorial Guinea	-	-	-	1	-
Angola	-	1	-	-	-	Estonia	7	8	6	5	18
Anguilla	-	1	-	-	-	Ethiopia	-	-	-	-	-
Antigua & Barbuda	-	-	-	-	2	Falkland Islands	-	-	-	-	-
Argentina	146	109	123	86	83	Fiji	2	1	1	1	-
Armenia	4	1	1	-	3	Finland	1,799	2,045	1,866	1,279	1,851
Aruba	1	1	-	-	-	French Polynesia	-	-	-	-	1
Australia	2,088	2,246	2,498	1,759	2,873	France	7,154	7,434	6,887	4,296	6,298
Austria	945	1,134	1,009	627	941	French Guiana	-	-	-	-	-
Azerbaijan	2	-	1	-	3	Gabon	-	-	-	-	-
Bahamas	14	26	22	24	17	Georgia	5	3	5	3	5
Bahrain	-	-	1	1	-	Germany	19,776	21,657	19,646	11,904	18,245
Bangladesh	1	1	1	-	-	Ghana	-	1	-	-	3
Barbados	4	4	-	7	9	Gibraltar	-	1	-	-	5
Belarus	4	8	6	7	4	Greece	48	56	44	37	52
Belgium	1,341	1,435	1,420	884	1,314	Grenada	-	-	1	-	-
Belize	-	-	-	-	-	Guadeloupe	-	-	-	-	-
Benelux Convention	-	-	-	-	-	Guatemala	12	3	1	-	1
Benin	-	-	-	-	1	Guyana	1	-	-	-	-
Bermuda	4	12	11	3	7	Guinea	-	-	-	-	-
Bolivia	1	1	-	1	1	Haiti	-	1	-	-	-
Bosnia & Herzegovina	-	-	-	-	1	Honduras	1	-	-	3	3
Botswana	-	-	-	-	-	Hungary	91	135	128	71	105
Brazil	247	288	333	203	276	Iceland	39	40	49	36	38
British Virgin Islands	2	13	15	14	5	India	636	813	1,105	937	1,278
Brunei	2	2	-	-	-	Indonesia	10	25	26	32	21
Bulgaria	10	10	8	74	53	Iran	4	4	5	2	3
Cameroon	-	-	-	-	2	Iraq	1	1	-	-	-
Canada	7,802	7,967	8,138	6,705	8,309	Ireland	401	448	382	311	446
Cayman Islands	8	10	1	5	14	Israel	2,781	2,737	2,611	1,840	2,827
Chile	29	44	27	42	48	Italy	3,185	3,336	3,325	2,208	3,170
China (Hong Kong)	1,008	1,109	1,159	1,120	1,223	Jamaica	1	2	3	3	5
China (People's Republic)	694	966	1,230	1,132	2,043	Japan	62,676	61,259	61,177	46,267	65,025
Columbia	28	26	22	16	13	Jordan	4	3	6	4	1
Cook Islands	-	-	-	-	-	Kazakhstan	2	1	2	1	2
Costa Rica	8	18	17	15	47	Kenya	13	12	28	3	7
Cote D'Ivoire	-	2	-	-	-	Korea, Dem. Republic of	-	-	-	-	-
Croatia	22	20	23	17	38	Korea, Republic of	6,792	7,757	9,614	9,730	15,200
Cuba	6	11	7	1	7	Kuwait	6	11	7	4	19
Cyprus	7	5	7	5	9	Kyrgyzstan	-	-	-	-	-
Czech Republic	83	55	52	46	80	Laos	-	-	-	-	-
Czechoslovakia	-	-	-	-	-	Latvia	5	2	2	3	6
Democratic Republic of the Congo	-	-	-	-	-	Lebanon	9	11	6	5	6
Denmark	1,130	1,227	1,145	700	947	Lesotho	-	-	-	-	-
Djibouti	-	-	-	-	-	Liechtenstein	33	28	34	16	23
Dominica	-	-	-	1	-	Lithuania	8	2	8	14	9
Dominican Republic	1	3	5	6	5	Luxembourg	77	81	72	51	71
						Macau	4	7	7	7	4
						Madagascar	2	-	-	-	-

**TABLE 9**  
**CONT.**

**UNITED STATES PATENT APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES<sup>1</sup>**  
**(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

**(PRELIMINARY FOR FY 2005)<sup>2</sup>**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Macedonia	2	-	-	3	1	San Marino	1	-	-	-	-
Malaysia	144	136	237	238	315	Saudi Arabia	32	35	33	20	36
Maldives	-	-	-	-	-	Senegal	-	-	-	-	-
Mali	-	-	-	-	-	Seychelles	1	-	3	1	2
Malta	6	5	3	2	6	Sierra Leone	-	-	-	-	-
Marshall Islands	1	-	-	-	-	Singapore	766	792	817	676	848
Mauritius	1	-	2	-	-	Slovakia	3	15	6	2	14
Mexico	220	167	213	152	197	Slovenia	21	21	55	32	40
Moldova	2	3	2	1	-	Solomon Islands	-	-	-	-	-
Monaco	29	27	29	10	16	South Africa	259	248	263	122	210
Mongolia	-	-	-	-	-	Soviet Union	-	-	-	-	-
Montserrat	-	-	-	-	-	Spain	611	690	633	460	727
Morocco	1	1	5	3	3	Sri Lanka	8	20	3	3	3
Mozambique	-	-	-	1	-	St. Lucia	1	1	-	-	-
Myanmar	-	-	-	-	-	Suriname	-	-	-	-	-
Namibia	-	-	-	-	-	Swaziland	-	-	-	-	-
Nauru	-	-	-	-	-	Sweden	3,001	2,692	2,311	1,360	2,002
Nepal	-	-	-	-	-	Switzerland	2,494	2,560	2,362	1,525	2,222
Netherlands	2,822	3,074	2,382	1,743	2,938	Syria Arab Rep	-	3	4	-	2
Netherlands Antilles	1	1	1	1	-	Taiwan	12,403	13,761	14,537	13,129	16,865
New Caledonia	-	3	-	-	-	Tanzania	1	1	1	-	-
New Zealand	355	402	473	202	324	Thailand	106	85	88	85	75
Nicaragua	1	-	-	-	-	Trinidad & Tobago	1	1	4	-	4
Niger	-	-	-	-	-	Tunisia	1	3	2	3	1
Nigeria	7	3	4	2	3	Turkey	31	39	41	34	53
Norfolk Island	-	1	-	-	-	Turks and Caicos Islands	5	7	6	1	2
Norway	452	587	470	275	463	Uganda	-	-	-	-	-
Oman	-	1	4	-	3	Ukraine	39	46	39	27	33
Pakistan	2	6	6	8	11	United Arab Emirates	2	11	10	14	12
Palau	-	1	-	-	-	United Kingdom	8,464	9,238	8,215	5,013	7,275
Panama	10	4	6	8	3	Uruguay	7	8	10	6	10
Paraguay	-	-	-	1	-	Uzbekistan	-	3	1	1	-
Peru	8	9	7	2	3	Vatican City	-	1	-	-	-
Philippines	47	72	37	52	53	Venezuela	65	41	30	18	30
Poland	43	46	48	58	101	Vietnam	5	1	1	2	6
Portugal	27	31	22	15	51	Yemen	-	-	-	-	-
Qatar	-	1	1	4	1	Yugoslavia	4	8	10	2	5
Romania	13	9	10	12	14	Zimbabwe	1	2	1	2	1
Russian Federation	417	403	345	195	313	Other <sup>3</sup>	-	-	-	41,389	15,936
Saint Kitts & Nevis	2	1	6	-	-						

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Data include utility, design, plant, and reissue applications. Country listings include possessions and territories of that country unless listed separately in the table.

<sup>2</sup> Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.

<sup>3</sup> Country of origin information not available.



**TABLE 10**

**PATENTS ISSUED BY THE UNITED STATES TO RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES<sup>1</sup>  
 (FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

**(PRELIMINARY FOR FY 2005)<sup>2</sup>**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>86,203</b>	<b>83,970</b>	<b>89,699</b>	<b>89,257</b>	<b>80,247</b>	French Polynesia	1	1	-	-	-
Albania	-	-	-	-	-	Georgia	2	1	3	4	2
Algeria	1	-	-	1	-	Germany	12,128	11,529	12,361	11,623	10,502
Andorra	-	1	1	1	2	Ghana	-	-	-	-	-
Angola	-	-	-	1	-	Gibraltar	-	-	-	-	-
Anguilla	-	-	-	-	-	Greece	23	21	26	15	18
Antigua & Barbuda	-	-	-	-	-	Guadeloupe	-	-	-	-	-
Arab Emirates	-	-	-	-	-	Guatemala	-	5	3	-	1
Argentina	58	54	68	57	37	Guinea	-	-	-	-	-
Armenia	1	1	2	1	-	Haiti	-	-	-	-	-
Aruba	-	1	-	1	-	Honduras	-	2	1	-	1
Australia	1,041	955	1,040	1,079	1,091	Hungary	57	49	67	62	48
Austria	653	535	627	606	546	Iceland	23	17	17	18	23
Azerbaijan	-	-	-	2	-	India	159	254	338	366	405
Bahamas	12	14	6	11	9	Indonesia	9	14	13	12	36
Bahrain <sup>2</sup>	-	-	-	-	-	Iran	1	1	-	-	1
Bangladesh	-	-	1	-	-	Ireland	174	136	187	190	192
Barbados	2	6	2	-	-	Israel	1,023	1,042	1,265	1,157	1,000
Belarus	5	3	6	2	2	Italy	2,052	1,945	2,015	2,009	1,706
Belgium	805	772	762	698	629	Ivory Coast	-	-	-	1	-
Bermuda	5	4	7	4	2	Jamaica	1	2	1	1	1
Bolivia	-	-	1	-	-	Japan	34,875	34,954	37,862	37,734	34,079
Bosnia and Herzegovina	1	1	-	-	-	Jordan	3	1	1	2	-
Brazil	127	113	150	192	93	Kazakhstan	3	2	1	2	2
British Virgin Islands	1	-	8	10	7	Kenya	4	3	7	18	10
Brunei	-	1	-	-	-	Korea, Dem. Republic of	-	-	-	-	-
Bulgaria	5	1	9	8	6	Korea, Republic of	3,783	3,755	4,198	4,590	4,811
Canada	4,157	3,809	3,869	3,980	3,368	Kuwait	4	11	5	6	3
Cayman Islands	6	6	11	2	2	Kyrgyzstan	2	-	-	-	-
Chile	15	13	16	17	15	Latvia	-	1	2	4	2
China (Hong Kong)	603	546	667	672	627	Lebanon	4	2	6	3	1
China (Mainland)	239	347	442	551	583	Liechtenstein	22	15	20	17	16
Colombia	13	14	11	11	9	Lithuania	4	2	4	3	5
Cook Islands	-	-	-	-	-	Luxembourg	46	52	55	56	49
Costa Rica	8	10	10	7	12	Macau	-	-	6	2	1
Croatia	8	10	14	9	10	Macedonia, Former	-	-	1	-	-
Cuba	4	8	8	4	3	Madagascar	1	1	-	-	-
Cyprus	1	-	1	2	6	Malaysia	51	57	65	86	95
Czech Republic	32	24	38	40	28	Malta	2	-	3	2	1
Czechoslovakia	7	4	-	1	-	Marshall Islands	-	1	-	-	-
Denmark	532	569	609	580	463	Mauritius	-	-	-	-	-
Dominica	2	-	-	-	-	Mexico	95	93	92	113	88
Dominican Republic	3	-	1	-	1	Moldova, Republic	-	1	1	4	1
Ecuador	3	1	5	2	3	Monaco	21	16	12	16	8
Egypt	10	4	6	4	7	Morocco	2	-	1	1	-
El Salvador <sup>2</sup>	3	-	-	2	2	Myanmar	-	-	-	-	-
Estonia	4	5	4	2	3	Namibia	-	-	-	-	-
Faroe Islands	-	-	-	-	-	Netherlands	1,465	1,604	1,640	1,619	1,268
Fiji	-	1	2	1	1	Netherlands Antilles	-	2	1	-	-
Finland	778	805	904	1,002	778	New Caledonia	-	-	-	-	-
France	4,576	4,289	4,228	3,846	3,355	New Guinea	-	-	1	-	-
French Guiana	-	-	-	-	-	New Zealand	147	162	171	187	163
						Nicaragua	-	-	-	1	-

**TABLE 10**  
**CONT.**

**PATENTS ISSUED BY THE UNITED STATES TO RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES<sup>1</sup>**  
**(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

**(PRELIMINARY FOR FY 2005)<sup>2</sup>**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Nigeria	-	3	5	2	-	Sri Lanka	5	5	14	2	3
Norfolk Island	-	-	-	-	-	Suriname	1	-	-	-	-
Norway	292	262	277	271	245	Sweden	1,946	1,824	1,708	1,452	1,270
Pakistan	2	2	1	3	4	Switzerland	1,574	1,489	1,513	1,406	1,214
Panama	1	1	2	2	1	Syrian Arab Rep	1	1	1	1	-
Paraguay	-	-	-	-	-	Taiwan	6,766	6,346	6,719	7,376	6,311
Peru	6	1	5	5	4	Tanzania	1	-	2	-	-
Philippines	14	20	17	28	18	Thailand	46	49	53	33	28
Poland	20	14	16	18	29	Trinidad & Tobago	2	2	2	-	-
Portugal	16	12	12	16	14	Tunisia	-	1	-	1	1
Palau	-	-	-	1	-	Turkey	14	16	21	31	11
Qatar	-	-	-	-	2	Turks and Caicos Islands	1	1	2	1	7
Romania	10	5	8	8	6	Uganda	1	1	-	-	-
Russian Federation	242	198	208	187	160	Ukraine	28	28	14	21	18
Saint Kitts & Nevis	2	1	1	-	-	United Arab Emirates	7	6	3	-	-
Saint Vincent/The Grenadines	-	-	-	-	-	United Kingdom	4,425	4,076	4,110	4,044	3,745
San Marino	-	-	-	-	-	Uruguay	1	3	1	1	1
Saudi Arabia	13	8	20	13	16	Uzbekistan	2	1	-	1	-
Singapore	299	392	443	498	420	Venezuela	33	27	23	24	14
Slovakia	3	8	5	6	1	Vietnam	-	5	1	1	2
Slovenia	22	16	16	23	17	Yemen	-	1	-	-	-
South Africa	144	107	145	107	115	Yugoslavia	4	5	1	1	5
Soviet Union	-	1	-	-	-	Democratic Republic of the Congo	-	-	-	-	-
Spain	350	350	341	337	320	Zimbabwe	1	1	1	-	2

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Data include utility, design, plant, and reissue patents. Country listings include possessions and territories of that country unless separately listed in the table.

<sup>2</sup> Data should be finalized by December 2005 and will be reported in the FY 2006 PAR.

**TABLE 11**

**STATUTORY INVENTION REGISTRATIONS (SIRs) PUBLISHED**  
**(FY 2001 - 2005)**

Assignee	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Air Force	11	8	2	5	6
Army	4	1	-	1	-
Energy	2	1	-	-	-
Navy	20	10	6	4	3
Health & Human Services	-	-	1	-	-
USA <sup>1</sup>	1	1	-	-	-
Other Than U.S. Government	93	32	25	17	5
<b>Total</b>	<b>131</b>	<b>53</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>14</b>

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> United States of America - no agency indicated in database.

**TABLE 12**

**UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT AGENCY PATENTS<sup>1</sup>**  
**(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

AGENCY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	TOTAL
Agriculture	66	46	58	51	25	246
Air Force	103	66	75	54	38	336
Army	151	149	140	130	124	694
Attorney General	-	-	1	-	-	1
Commerce	21	21	13	9	8	72
Energy	68	52	43	46	22	231
EPA	11	8	5	11	7	42
FCC	-	1	-	-	-	1
HEW/HHS	99	92	84	125	76	476
Interior	7	7	13	7	12	46
Library of Congress	-	-	-	-	-	-
NASA	92	82	82	98	74	428
Navy	326	362	359	353	257	1,657
NSA	11	11	15	10	10	57
NSF	-	-	-	1	-	1
Postal Service	2	-	4	3	7	16
State Department	1	-	-	-	1	2
Transportation	-	1	5	1	2	9
Treasury	-	-	-	-	-	-
TVA	3	-	2	1	1	7
USA <sup>2</sup>	1	-	1	-	-	2
VA	1	2	4	1	6	14
<b>Total</b>	<b>963</b>	<b>900</b>	<b>904</b>	<b>901</b>	<b>670</b>	<b>4,338</b>

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Data in this table represent utility patents assigned to agencies at the time of patent issue.

<sup>2</sup> United States of America - no agency indicated in database.

**TABLE 13A**

**EX PARTE REEXAMINATION  
(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

ACTIVITY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Requests filed, total</b>	<b>296</b>	<b>272</b>	<b>392</b>	<b>441</b>	<b>524</b>
By patent owner	144	121	136	166	166
By third party	150	140	239	268	358
Commissioner ordered	2	11	17	7	—
<b>Determinations on requests, total</b>	<b>342</b>	<b>272</b>	<b>381</b>	<b>419</b>	<b>535</b>
Requests granted:					
By examiner	263	262	360	408	509
By petition	2	1	1	—	—
Requests denied	77	9	20	11	26
<b>Requests known to have related litigation</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>109</b>	<b>138</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>Filings by discipline, total</b>	<b>296</b>	<b>272</b>	<b>392</b>	<b>441</b>	<b>524</b>
Chemical	90	87	124	130	138
Electrical	89	78	118	156	188
Mechanical	117	107	150	155	198

**TABLE 13B**

**INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION  
(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

ACTIVITY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Requests filed, total</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Determinations on requests, total</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>57</b>
Requests granted:	-	5	18	25	54
By examiner	-	-	18	25	54
By petition	-	-	-	-	-
Requests denied	-	-	2	-	3
<b>Requests known to have related litigation</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Filings by discipline, total</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>59</b>
Chemical	1	2	3	6	17
Electrical	-	-	7	7	20
Mechanical	-	2	11	14	22



**TABLE 14**

**SUMMARY OF CONTESTED PATENT CASES**  
*(Within the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, as of September 30, 2005)*

ITEM	TOTAL
<b>Ex parte cases</b>	
Appeals <sup>1</sup>	
Cases Pending as of 9/30/05	985
Cases Filed During FY 2005	2,834
<b>Disposals During FY 2005, total</b>	
Decided, total	<b>2,937</b>
Affirmed	1,121
Affirmed-in-Part	366
Reversed	1,163
Dismissed/Withdrawn	111
Remanded	176
<b>Cases Pending as of 9/30/05</b>	<b>882</b>
<b>Rehearings</b>	
Cases Pending as of 9/30/05	21
<b>Inter partes cases</b>	
Cases pending as of 9/30/05	76
Cases declared or reinstituted during FY 2005	94
<b>Inter partes cases, FY 2005 total</b>	<b>170</b>
Cases terminated during FY 2005	96
<b>Cases pending as of 9/30/05</b>	<b>74</b>

**TABLE 15**

**SUMMARY OF TRADEMARK EXAMINING ACTIVITIES  
(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

ITEM	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Applications for Registration:</b>					
Applications including Additional Classes	296,388	258,873	267,218	298,489	323,501
Applications Filed	232,939	207,287	218,596	244,848	258,527
<b>Disposal of Trademark Applications:</b>					
Registrations including Additional Classes	124,502	164,457	185,182	155,991	143,396
Abandonments including Additional Classes	142,973	120,102	119,858	109,931	108,879
Trademark First Actions including Additional Classes	464,618	253,187	276,568	268,865	317,757
Applications Approved for Publication including Additional Classes	235,419	217,487	168,235	186,271	211,624
<b>Certificates of Registration Issued:<sup>1</sup></b>					
1946 Act Principal Register	61,152	81,096	83,022	65,797	63,088
Principal Register					
ITU-Statements of Use Registered	36,188	45,064	54,046	49,479	43,930
1946 Act Supplemental Register	4,974	7,065	6,356	4,780	5,477
Total Certificates of Registration	102,314	133,225	143,424	120,056	112,495
<b>Renewal of Registration:<sup>*</sup></b>					
Section 9 Applications Filed	24,174	34,325	35,210	32,352	39,354
Section 8 Applications Filed**	24,167	34,271	34,189	32,389	39,659
Registrations Renewed	31,477	29,957	34,370	34,735	32,279
Affidavits, Sec. 8/15:					
Affidavits Filed	33,547	39,484	43,151	41,157	47,752
Affidavits Disposed	37,092	35,375	39,603	40,765	41,466
Affidavits for Benefits:					
Under Sec. 12(c)	-	-	1	9	1
Published Under Sec. 12(c)	15	26	5	4	3
Amendments to Allege Use Filed	8,582	8,261	8,458	9,414	9,497
Statements of Use Filed	47,811	53,974	67,222	57,731	54,182
Notice of Allowance Issued	120,166	158,868	139,332	108,684	108,268
<b>Total Active Certificates of Registration</b>	<b>1,063,164</b>	<b>1,116,200</b>	<b>1,184,888</b>	<b>1,216,691</b>	<b>1,255,570</b>
<b>Pendency - Average Months:</b>					
Between Filing and Examiner's First Action	2.7	4.3	5.4	6.6	6.3
Between Filing, Registration (Use Applications)					
Abandonments, and NOA's - including suspended and inter partes proceedings	17.8	19.9	19.8	19.5	19.6
Between Filing, Registration (Use Applications)					
Abandonments, and NOA's - excluding suspended and inter partes proceedings	16.4	18.3	16.2	16.2	17.2

<sup>1</sup> With the exception of Certificates of Registration, Renewal of Registration, Affidavits filed under Section 8/15 and 12(c), the workload count includes extra classes.

"Applications filed" refers simply to the number of individual trademark applications received by the PTO. There are, however, 47 different classes of items in which a trademark may be registered. An application must request registration in at least one class, but may request registration in multiple classes. Each class application must be individually researched for registrability. "Applications filed, including additional classes" reflects this fact, and therefore more accurately reflects the Trademark business workload. With the exception of Certificates of Registration, Renewal of Registration, Affidavits filed under Section 8/15 and 12(c), the workload count includes extra classes.

\*Renewal of registration is required beginning 10 years following registration concurrent with 20 - year renewals coming due.

\*\*Section 8 Affidavit is required for filing a renewal beginning October 30, 1999 (FY 2000) with the implementation of the Trademark Law Treaty.

**TABLE 16**

**TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS FILED FOR REGISTRATION  
 AND RENEWAL AND TRADEMARK AFFIDAVITS FILED  
 (FY 1985 - FY 2005)**

YEAR	FOR REGISTRATION	FOR RENEWAL	SECTION 8 AFFIDAVIT	SEC. 12(C) AFFIDAVIT
1985	64,677	5,275	8,823	29
1986	69,253	5,660	8,519	19
1987	70,002	5,871	16,644	34
1988	76,813	6,763	18,316	23
1989	83,169	6,127	17,986	104
1990	127,294	6,602	20,636	5
1991	120,365	5,634	25,763	1
1992	125,237	6,355	20,982	25
1993	139,735	7,173	21,999	5
1994	155,376	7,004	20,850	4
1995	175,307	7,346	23,497	-
1996	200,640	7,543	22,169	6
1997	224,355	6,720	20,781	2
1998	232,384	7,413	33,231	-
1999	295,165	7,944	33,104	-
2000	375,428	24,435 <sup>1</sup>	28,920	-
2001	296,388	24,174	33,547	4
2002	258,873	34,325	39,484	-
2003	267,218	35,210	43,151	1
2004	298,489	32,352	41,157	9
<b>2005</b>	<b>323,501</b>	<b>39,354</b>	<b>47,752</b>	<b>1</b>

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Concurrent 10 and 20 year renewal of registration.

**TABLE 17**

**SUMMARY OF PENDING TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS**  
*(As of September 30, 2005)*

STAGE OF PROCESSING	APPLICATION FILES	CLASSES
<b>Pending applications, total</b>	<b>497,394</b>	<b>653,039</b>
<b>In preexamination processing</b>	<b>138,010</b>	<b>165,612</b>
<b>Under examination, total</b>	<b>247,150</b>	<b>338,004</b>
<b>Applications under initial examination</b>	<b>101,007</b>	<b>136,044</b>
Amended, awaiting action by Examiner	98,312	132,654
Awaiting first action by Examiner	2,695	3,390
<b>Intent-To-Use applications pending Use</b>	<b>99,484</b>	<b>133,944</b>
<b>Applications under second examination</b>	<b>7,156</b>	<b>9,310</b>
Administrative processing of Statements of Use	106	119
Undergoing second examination	2,342	2,951
Amended, awaiting action by Examiner	4,708	6,240
<b>Other pending applications <sup>1</sup></b>	<b>39,503</b>	<b>58,706</b>
<b>In postexamination processing</b>	<b>112,234</b>	<b>149,423</b>
(Includes all applications in all phases of publication and issue and registration)		

<sup>1</sup> Includes applications pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, and suspended cases.



**TABLE 18****TRADEMARKS REGISTERED, RENEWED, AND PUBLISHED UNDER SECTION 12(C)<sup>1</sup>  
(FY 1985 - FY 2005)**

YEAR	CERTIFICATES OF REGIS. ISSUED	RENEWED	PUBLISHED UNDER 12(C)	Registrations ( <i>Incl Classes</i> )
1985	63,122	5,177	27	-
1986	48,971	5,550	29	-
1987	47,522	4,415	24	-
1988	46,704	5,884	29	-
1989	51,802	9,209	84	-
1990	56,515	7,122	19	-
1991	43,152	6,416	19	-
1992	62,067	5,733	13	-
1993	74,349	6,182	21	86,122
1994	59,797	6,136	11	68,853
1995	65,662	6,785	4	75,372
1996	78,674	7,346	11	91,339
1997	97,294	7,389	11	112,509
1998	89,634	6,504	8	106,279
1999	87,774	6,280	3	104,324
2000	106,383	8,821	15	127,794
2001	102,314	31,477	11	124,502
2002	133,225	29,957	26	164,457
2003	143,424	34,370	5	185,182
2004	120,056	34,735	4	155,991
<b>2005</b>	<b>112,495</b>	<b>32,279</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>143,396</b>

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Includes withdrawn numbers.

**TABLE 19** **TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES (FY 2005)**

State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>262,506</b>	Kentucky	1,418	Oklahoma	1,328
Alabama	1,370	Louisiana	1,379	Oregon	2,808
Alaska	275	Maine	743	Pennsylvania	7,376
Arizona	5,020	Maryland	4,794	Rhode Island	945
Arkansas	761	Massachusetts	7,491	South Carolina	1,559
California	56,167	Michigan	5,356	South Dakota	385
Colorado	5,738	Minnesota	5,610	Tennessee	3,412
Connecticut	4,328	Mississippi	474	Texas	13,609
Delaware	3,552	Missouri	3,931	Utah	2,752
District of Columbia	2,390	Montana	550	Vermont	533
Florida	17,285	Nebraska	988	Virginia	6,113
Georgia	6,700	Nevada	4,303	Washington	5,580
Hawaii	825	New Hampshire	1,029	West Virginia	286
Idaho	708	New Jersey	10,227	Wisconsin	3,484
Illinois	11,782	New Mexico	678	Wyoming	284
Indiana	2,588	New York	28,164	Puerto Rico	279
Iowa	1,297	North Carolina	4,273	Virgin Islands	26
Kansas	1,563	North Dakota	183	U.S. Pacific Islands <sup>1</sup>	8
		Ohio	7,510	United States <sup>2</sup>	289

<sup>1</sup> Represents residents of American Samoa, Guam, and miscellaneous U.S. Pacific Islands.

<sup>2</sup> No State indicated in data base, includes APO filings.

**TABLE 20****TRADEMARKS REGISTERED TO RESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES<sup>1</sup>  
(FY 2005)**

State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005	State/Territory	No. for 2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>92,527</b>	Kentucky	387	Oklahoma	399
Alabama	331	Louisiana	320	Oregon	891
Alaska	51	Maine	228	Pennsylvania	2,061
Arizona	1,002	Maryland	1,061	Rhode Island	409
Arkansas	172	Massachusetts	1,653	South Carolina	452
California	10,016	Michigan	1,728	South Dakota	98
Colorado	1,337	Minnesota	1,856	Tennessee	792
Connecticut	749	Mississippi	133	Texas	3,278
Delaware	20,040	Missouri	1,095	Utah	713
District of Columbia	500	Montana	107	Vermont	150
Florida	3,696	Nebraska	344	Virginia	1,367
Georgia	1,564	Nevada	1,909	Washington	1,686
Hawaii	147	New Hampshire	272	West Virginia	70
Idaho	166	New Jersey	2,166	Wisconsin	1,295
Illinois	3,042	New Mexico	172	Wyoming	111
Indiana	978	New York	5,359	Puerto Rico	49
Iowa	516	North Carolina	1,084	Virgin Islands	11
Kansas	401	North Dakota	62	U.S. Pacific Islands <sup>2</sup>	3
		Ohio	2,134	United States <sup>3</sup>	11,914

<sup>1</sup> When a trademark is registered, the trademark database is corrected to indicate the home state of the entity registering the trademark.

<sup>2</sup> Represents residents of American Samoa, Guam, and miscellaneous U.S. Pacific Islands.

<sup>3</sup> No State indicated in data base, includes APO filings.

**TABLE 21** **TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES**  
 (FY 2001 - FY 2005)

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>65,589</b>	<b>50,052</b>	<b>49,371</b>	<b>46,832</b>	<b>60,995</b>	Dominican Republic	43	40	57	13	47
Albania	-	-	1	1	1	East Timor	-	-	1	-	-
Algeria	-	-	-	-	-	Ecuador	40	10	15	25	18
Andorra	1	5	3	-	3	Egypt	24	3	8	19	17
Angola	1	1	-	-	2	El Salvador	59	33	35	55	50
Anguilla	18	11	7	6	4	EPO	-	-	-	-	-
Antigua & Barbuda	43	30	-	2	26	Estonia	13	10	4	3	16
Argentina	246	189	266	202	225	Ethiopia	-	-	1	-	4
Armenia	8	1	-	1	2	Faroe Islands	-	-	-	-	-
Aruba	13	9	6	3	24	Fiji	-	10	3	2	12
Australia	1,731	1,478	1,794	1,845	2,204	Finland	656	442	336	275	374
Austria	604	743	444	401	696	France	4,636	3,546	3,473	2,427	4,555
Azerbaijan	-	-	-	5	-	French Guiana	-	1	-	-	-
Bahamas	153	220	158	139	207	French Polynesia	1	1	6	49	16
Bahrain	3	3	4	10	3	French South/Antarctic	-	-	-	-	-
Bangladesh	7	-	-	-	-	Gabon	-	-	-	-	-
Barbados	92	120	165	207	213	Georgia	12	1	1	2	6
Belarus	-	2	1	-	18	Germany	9,474	7,195	6,412	6,466	8,146
Belgium	548	454	425	266	581	Ghana	-	-	-	-	-
Belize	15	23	9	9	12	Gibraltar	12	11	21	24	65
Benelux Convention	-	2	-	-	-	Greece	22	46	44	236	64
Benin	-	-	-	3	2	Greenland	-	-	-	-	-
Bermuda	258	322	340	282	251	Grenada	3	1	-	-	1
Bolivia	2	4	1	2	4	Guadeloupe	-	1	2	2	3
Botswana	-	-	-	-	-	Guatemala	30	19	8	39	42
Brazil	443	472	400	453	495	Guinea	-	-	-	-	-
British Virgin Islands	363	259	202	151	389	Guyana	2	4	1	1	6
Brunei	1	-	-	-	1	Hague	-	-	-	-	-
Bulgaria	6	2	13	17	84	Haiti	8	6	5	8	4
Burundi	-	-	-	-	-	Honduras	4	1	6	5	4
Cambodia	1	1	-	1	-	Hong Kong	898	860	794	862	1,130
Cameroon	-	3	-	2	-	Hungary	48	35	33	40	88
Canada	8,086	6,765	6,838	7,365	7,730	Iceland	64	15	35	86	42
Cape Verde	-	-	2	-	-	India	214	267	291	260	275
Cayman Islands	190	117	113	81	188	Indonesia	50	37	45	24	55
Central African Republic	-	1	-	-	-	Iran	3	-	1	20	12
Channel Islands	65	72	50	27	73	Ireland	469	331	317	359	392
Chile	207	141	190	183	217	Isle of Man	34	55	27	27	56
China (mainland)	448	472	474	594	1,246	Israel	835	448	480	476	534
Christmas Island	-	2	-	-	-	Italy	2,380	1,919	2,115	1,577	2,894
Colombia	170	135	151	181	156	Jamaica	56	33	31	50	55
Comoros	1	-	-	-	-	Japan	9,008	4,450	4,342	4,239	4,824
Cook Islands	10	9	4	3	2	Jordan	13	14	6	18	7
Costa Rica	12	23	32	41	58	Kazakhstan	-	-	-	2	-
Cote d'Ivoire	-	1	-	-	-	Kenya	42	13	21	9	9
Croatia	7	10	6	10	47	Korea, Dem. Republic of	-	1	6	-	1
Cuba	1	2	-	2	26	Korea, Republic of	913	887	758	446	614
Cyprus	34	21	66	60	73	Kuwait	7	3	-	3	2
Czechoslovakia	39	58	55	59	93	Kyrgyzstan	-	-	-	-	2
Democratic Republic of the Congo	-	-	-	-	-	Latvia	4	-	7	8	29
Denmark	716	568	564	353	637	Laos	-	-	-	-	-
Djibouti	-	-	-	-	-	Lebanon	13	10	13	14	22
Dominica	2	-	-	1	3	Liberia	-	-	-	-	-
						Liechtenstein	89	61	58	56	165
						Lithuania	3	3	1	1	9



**TABLE 21**  
**CONT.**

**TRADEMARK APPLICATIONS FILED BY RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES**  
**(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Luxembourg	135	186	130	134	294	Saint Christ-Nevis	-	6	2	2	12
Macao	-	-	-	1	1	Saint Lucia	-	2	-	2	8
Macau	1	3	5	-	-	Saint Pierre/Mique	-	-	-	-	-
Macedonia	1	-	1	-	-	Saint Vincent/Grenadines	14	1	-	1	3
Madagascar	-	1	-	2	-	Samoa	-	1	-	1	2
Malawi, Republic of	-	-	-	-	-	San Marino	6	-	-	3	2
Malaysia	66	60	28	98	97	Saudi Arabia	22	18	26	21	27
Mali	-	-	-	-	-	Scotland	95	82	94	35	66
Malta	6	3	29	10	8	Senegal, Republic of	1	-	-	-	-
Marshall Islands	2	-	-	4	2	Serbia/Montenegro	-	-	-	3	3
Martinique	1	1	-	-	-	Seychelles	5	5	1	1	5
Mauritania	-	-	-	-	2	Sierra Leone	-	-	-	-	1
Mauritius	30	38	44	46	27	Singapore	339	283	285	205	311
Mayotte	-	-	-	-	-	Slovakia	3	3	7	2	24
Mexico	982	1,026	994	1,103	1,403	Slovenia	8	36	38	13	53
Micronesia	-	1	-	-	2	Solomon Islands	4	-	-	-	-
Moldova	2	-	-	-	-	Somalia	-	-	-	-	-
Monaco	136	72	68	69	81	South Africa	206	170	175	194	208
Mongolia	-	-	3	1	-	Russian Federation	111	145	144	118	276
Montserrat	-	-	1	-	-	Spain	1,035	852	984	1,097	1,136
Morocco	-	1	2	2	18	Sri Lanka	7	6	10	20	12
Mozambique	-	-	-	-	1	Sudan	-	1	-	-	-
Myanmar	-	-	1	-	-	Suriname	1	-	-	1	-
N. Mariana Island	-	3	1	4	2	Swaziland	57	-	1	1	2
Namibia	3	1	-	-	-	Sweden	1,490	836	919	658	1,123
Nauru	-	-	-	-	-	Switzerland	3,023	2,754	2,867	2,093	3,346
Navassa Island	-	-	-	-	-	Syria	-	-	-	1	3
Nepal	5	9	-	-	-	Taiwan	1,060	1,143	1,259	1,424	1,196
Netherlands	2,063	1,596	1,331	1,088	1,725	Tajikistan	-	-	-	-	-
Netherlands Antilles	64	55	30	22	41	Tanzania	-	-	-	-	-
New Caledonia	1	-	-	-	-	Thailand	78	103	153	127	114
New Hebrides	1	-	-	-	-	Tokelau	1	-	-	-	-
New Zealand	359	292	362	535	510	Tonga	-	-	-	-	-
Newfoundland	2	5	-	-	-	Trinidad & Tobago	11	9	11	3	7
Nicaragua	5	5	7	10	9	Tunisia	1	-	3	-	5
Nigeria	-	15	6	1	1	Turkey	131	85	166	174	349
Niue	-	-	-	-	2	Turks and Caicos Islands	2	5	-	-	-
Norway	319	206	178	159	331	Uganda	-	1	7	-	-
Oman	2	2	-	5	5	Ukraine	17	2	29	19	59
Pakistan	5	4	8	18	12	United Arab Emirates	61	31	24	21	48
Panama	36	47	46	108	125	United Kingdom	7,860	5,597	5,586	5,432	6,273
Papua New Guinea	-	-	1	-	1	Uruguay	17	19	36	41	47
Paraguay	4	2	2	28	11	Uzbekistan	-	-	-	1	-
Peru	27	37	28	33	50	Vanuatu	9	2	31	6	7
Philippines	42	31	12	26	56	Venezuela	115	75	112	73	53
Pitcairn Islands	-	-	-	-	-	Vietnam	5	55	79	60	39
Poland	64	59	99	97	148	Yemen	-	-	-	1	3
Portugal	134	106	133	77	198	Yugoslavia	-	4	-	10	9
Qatar	6	6	-	-	6	Yukon Territory	-	-	-	-	-
Republic Moldova	-	-	22	2	22	Zambia	-	-	-	-	-
Reunion	-	-	-	-	-	Zimbabwe	2	2	2	1	-
Romania	14	14	1	6	48	Other <sup>1</sup>	547	257	143	82	261
St. Kitts & Nevis	-	-	-	-	-						

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Country of Origin information not available or not indicated in database, includes ARIPO filings.

**TABLE 22**

**TRADEMARKS REGISTERED TO RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES  
 (FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Total</b>	<b>21,269</b>	<b>19,052</b>	<b>25,217</b>	<b>22,485</b>	<b>19,968</b>	El Salvador	4	9	18	11	20
Afghanistan	1	-	-	2	2	Estonia	-	2	3	5	4
Albania	-	-	-	-	1	Ethiopia	2	1	1	-	-
Algeria	-	-	-	-	-	Faroe Islands	-	-	-	-	-
Andorra	1	-	1	2	-	Fiji	4	1	5	5	2
Angola, Republic of	3	2	-	-	-	Finland	135	159	200	163	130
Anguilla	2	1	8	3	5	France	2,063	1,560	2,105	1,642	1,360
Antigua & Barbuda	12	15	11	5	4	French Polynesia	-	1	-	9	-
Argentina	47	68	108	142	92	Gabon	-	1	-	-	-
Armenia	2	5	6	3	1	Georgia	7	8	10	5	-
Aruba	-	1	2	2	-	Germany	3,691	2,561	3,654	2,996	2,583
Australia	629	663	845	775	709	Ghana	-	2	2	-	-
Austria	217	171	268	199	178	Gibraltar	15	11	4	7	2
Azerbaijan	-	-	-	-	-	Greece	10	16	15	16	18
Bahamas	31	41	79	57	39	Greenland	-	-	-	-	-
Bahrain	1	1	1	2	4	Grenada	-	-	2	-	-
Bangladesh	-	-	2	2	1	Guatemala	7	9	17	11	5
Barbados	22	26	38	56	78	Guyana	-	1	3	5	1
Belarus	-	1	2	-	2	Hague	-	-	-	-	-
Belgium	211	205	272	194	152	Haiti	1	-	2	-	-
Belize	4	3	5	16	3	Honduras	3	2	3	2	1
Benelux Convention	-	1	2	-	6	Hong Kong	267	288	387	391	290
Bermuda	82	94	108	93	148	Hungary	8	10	13	16	27
Bolivia	1	-	3	-	1	Iceland	8	10	14	17	11
Bosnia & Herzegovina	-	-	2	-	-	India	96	73	111	115	104
Brazil	55	110	160	181	152	Indonesia	18	16	26	24	17
British Virgin Islands	-	133	177	167	182	Iraq	-	1	-	-	-
Brunei Darussalam	-	1	-	-	-	Iran	5	8	7	2	5
Bulgaria	2	5	4	4	7	Ireland	135	107	151	133	117
Burundi	-	-	-	1	1	Isle of Man	12	7	8	11	5
Cambodia	-	1	-	1	-	Israel	226	262	380	248	218
Cameroon	-	-	1	-	1	Italy	1,079	979	1,253	967	899
Canada	3,062	2,911	3,398	3,187	2,917	Jamaica	12	19	16	9	23
Cayman Islands	47	43	85	81	53	Japan	1,585	1,510	1,896	2,010	1,821
Central African Rep.	-	-	-	-	-	Jordan	6	9	3	3	11
Channel Islands	7	50	40	-	14	Kenya	1	1	6	7	4
Chile	35	45	110	90	92	Kiribati	-	-	-	-	-
China (mainland)	197	174	326	358	364	Korea, Dem. Republic of	-	2	1	8	2
Colombia	44	58	69	59	85	Korea, Republic of	251	283	431	470	395
Comoros	-	-	-	-	-	Kuwait	2	2	2	3	1
Congo	-	-	-	-	2	Latvia	1	1	3	2	2
Cook Islands	2	7	5	6	1	Lebanon	6	2	7	9	6
Costa Rica	8	4	14	7	17	Liberia	12	13	13	13	5
Cote D'Ivoire	-	-	-	1	1	Libya	-	-	-	-	-
Croatia	-	5	1	3	4	Liechtenstein	38	30	43	48	44
Cuba	4	4	8	4	-	Lithuania	-	1	3	2	3
Cyprus	8	6	15	10	11	Luxembourg	47	59	56	57	71
Czechoslovakia	18	22	30	24	13	Macau	3	2	-	-	3
Denmark	187	177	281	219	193	Macedonia	-	2	-	1	-
Dominica	-	-	-	-	1	Malaysia	17	24	21	27	27
Dominican Republic	18	24	19	26	27	Malta	-	1	4	9	5
Ecuador	13	9	18	8	10	Marshall Islands	-	-	-	3	1
Egypt	3	3	4	1	3	Mauritania	-	-	-	1	-
						Mauritius	1	3	12	16	16

**TABLE 22**  
**CONT.**

**TRADEMARKS REGISTERED TO RESIDENTS OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES**  
**(FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	Residence	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Mexico	308	342	435	396	433	Sierra Leone	1	-	-	-	-
Micronesia	-	1	1	1	-	Singapore	76	82	95	102	100
Moldova	-	1	-	-	-	Slovakia	1	-	4	10	2
Monaco	30	10	18	14	19	Slovenia	15	5	9	5	3
Mongolia	-	-	-	-	1	South Africa	57	62	117	92	-
Morocco	2	1	1	1	2	Russian Federation	35	23	53	46	37
Myanmar	-	-	-	-	-	Spain	391	474	560	482	432
Namibia	-	1	1	1	-	Sprattly Islands	-	-	-	-	-
N. Mariana Island	-	-	1	1	4	Sri Lanka	5	9	3	5	5
Netherlands	701	628	782	615	610	Sudan	-	-	1	-	-
Netherlands Antilles	48	27	33	29	17	Swaziland	2	-	1	1	1
Nepal	-	-	3	-	1	Sweden	476	406	532	460	381
New Zealand	113	97	196	165	136	Switzerland	1,028	820	1,261	1,078	932
Nicaragua	1	6	1	4	2	Syria	-	1	3	6	3
Nigeria	17	7	5	4	2	Taiwan	569	656	698	662	683
Norway	86	100	145	84	71	Thailand	42	43	55	62	52
Oman	-	-	-	-	2	Tonga	-	-	-	1	-
Pakistan	6	10	7	5	7	Trinidad & Tobago	5	4	8	24	8
Panama	28	41	34	43	42	Tunisia	-	-	-	1	-
Papua New Guinea	-	-	-	-	-	Turkey	35	35	43	48	57
Paraguay	1	2	1	-	3	Turks and Caicos Islands	12	9	14	-	-
Peru	6	9	22	22	16	Uganda	-	-	-	-	1
Philippines	12	12	25	23	16	Ukraine	3	4	6	4	3
Poland	7	20	25	31	36	United Arab Emirates	3	9	6	10	12
Portugal	39	40	64	60	48	United Kingdom	2,260	1,803	2,357	2,234	1,777
Qatar	-	-	-	1	-	Upper Volta	-	-	-	1	-
Republic Moldova	-	-	1	-	3	Uruguay	2	12	9	12	23
Romania	8	3	11	3	8	Uzbekistan	-	-	-	-	1
Saint Christ & Nevis	-	-	6	15	18	Vanuatu	-	3	-	1	1
St. Kitts & Nevis	1	-	-	-	-	Vatican City	-	-	-	-	-
Saint Lucia	-	-	3	-	1	Venezuela	21	29	43	39	28
Saint Vincent/Grenadines	-	-	2	-	4	Vietnam	-	5	21	35	35
San Marino	-	-	1	-	4	Western Samoa	-	1	1	1	1
Saudi Arabia	4	2	12	3	12	Yemen	-	-	-	-	-
Scotland	23	10	18	18	12	Yugoslavia	1	-	-	1	-
Senegal	-	-	1	-	-	Zimbabwe	1	-	2	-	-
Seychelles	7	1	6	21	9	Other <sup>1</sup>	26	27	15	12	15

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Country of origin information not available.

**TABLE 23**

**SUMMARY OF CONTESTED TRADEMARK CASES**  
*(Within the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, as of September 30, 2005)*

ACTIVITY	EX PARTE	CANCELLATIONS	USE	INTERFERENCE	OPPOSITION	TOTAL
<b>Cases pending as of 9/30/05, total</b>	<b>2,533</b>	<b>1,766</b>	<b>102</b>	-	<b>6,457</b>	<b>10,858</b>
<b>Cases filed during FY 2005</b>	<b>2,536</b>	<b>1,368</b>	<b>52</b>	-	<b>4,696</b>	<b>8,652</b>
<b>Disposals during FY 2005, total</b>	<b>2,169</b>	<b>1,402</b>	<b>53</b>	-	<b>5,031</b>	<b>8,655</b>
Before hearing	1,822	1,381	53	-	4,946	8,202
After hearing	347	21	-	-	85	453
<b>Cases pending as of 9/30/05, total</b>	<b>2,900</b>	<b>1,732</b>	<b>101</b>	-	<b>6,122</b>	<b>10,855</b>
Awaiting decision	91	9	-	-	32	132
In process before hearing <sup>1</sup>	2,809	1,723	101	-	6,090	10,723
<b>Requests for extension of time to oppose</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Includes suspended cases.



**TABLE 24 ACTIONS ON PETITIONS TO THE COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS (FY 2001 - FY 2005)**

NATURE OF PETITION	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Patent matters</b>					
<b>Actions on patent petitions, total</b>	<b>37,523</b>	<b>16,461</b>	<b>49,049</b>	<b>46,568</b>	<b>44,361</b>
Acceptance of:					
Late assignments	85	30	42	33	432
Late issue fees	1,332	1,676	2,362	1,441	938
Late priority papers	72	330	1,184	1,112	27
Access	4	6	3	-	10
Certificates of correction	22,157	-	32,455	30,406	27,763
Deferment of issue	25	21	40	40	21
Entity Status Change	986	836	-	1,621	1,289
Filing date	1,375	2,158	1,776	1,267	1,815
Maintenance fees	1,614	1,614	2,002	1,913	2,208
Revivals	4,231	3,395	4,154	4,400	5,190
Rule 47 (37 CFR 1.47)	1,531	1,698	2,045	1,519	2,055
Supervisory authority	44	112	196	69	131
Suspend rules	875	1,052	1,441	1,006	290
Withdrawal from issue	991	1,178	881	1,451	1,950
Withdrawals of holding of aband./pat. lapse	2,201	2,355	468	290	242
<b>Trademark matters</b>					
<b>Actions on trademark petitions, total</b>	<b>10,374</b>	<b>24,699</b>	<b>18,493</b>	<b>17,791</b>	<b>22,377</b>
Affidavits of Use and extensions	-	1	3	-	-
Decision by examiner	23	14	20	23	10
Filing date restorations <sup>1</sup>	1,785	846	495	270	211
Grant application filing date	25	29	21	8	17
Inadvertently issued registrations	325	654	516	220	181
Interferences	1	2	-	-	1
Letters of Protest*				765	811
Make special	199	133	138	167	208
Miscellaneous	23	40	46	74	68
Oppositions and extensions	6	3	4	1	2
Record documents affecting title	2	1	4	-	-
Reinstatements <sup>2</sup>	2,043	6,304	3,845	2,972	1,964
Restore jurisdiction to examiner	2	2	8	19	3
Review board decisions	13	10	14	5	8
Revoke	5,633	16,222	12,771	12,476	18,134
Section 7 correction/amendment	10	17	10	16	20
Section 9 renewal	13	14	28	21	10
Section 8 or 15	60	75	61	86	73
Section 44(e) Amendment	183	317	493	622	629
Review Letter of Protest Decision	8	4	2	4	3
Waive fees/refunds	20	11	14	42	24
<b>Petitions awaiting action as of 9/30</b>					
Trademark petitions awaiting response	503	2,197	354	253	222
Trademark petitions awaiting action	6,060	582	1,791	2,179	379
Trademark pending filing date issues	24	12	8	1	7

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Trademark Applications entitled to a particular filing date; based on clear evidence of Trademark organization error.

<sup>2</sup> Trademark Applications restored to pendency; inadvertently abandoned by the Trademark organization.

\* Not reported in previous years.

**TABLE 25**

**CASES IN LITIGATION**  
*(Selected Courts of the United States, as of September 30, 2005)*

	PATENTS	TRADEMARKS	OED	TOTAL
<b>United States District Courts</b>				
Civil actions pending as of 9/30/04, total	15	1	1	17
Filed during FY 2005	11	2	1	14
Disposals, total	<b>14</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>16</b>
Affirmed	2	1	1	4
Reversed	-	-	-	-
Remanded	-	-	-	-
Dismissed	11	-	-	11
Amicus/intervene	-	-	-	-
Transfer	1	-	-	1
<b>Civil actions pending as of 9/30/05, total</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>United States Courts of Appeals<sup>1</sup></b>				
<b>Ex parte cases</b>				
Cases pending as of 9/30/04	29	7	1	37
Cases filed during FY 2005	36	9	2	47
Disposals, total	<b>40</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>54</b>
Affirmed	19	7	1	27
Reversed	-	-	-	-
Remanded	6	2	-	8
Dismissed	12	2	1	15
Vacated	-	1	-	1
Transfer	1	-	-	1
Writs of mandamus:	-	-	-	-
Granted	-	-	-	-
Granted-in-part	-	-	-	-
Denied	2	-	-	2
Dismissed	-	-	-	-
<b>Total ex parte cases pending as of 9/30/05</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Inter partes cases</b>				
Cases pending as of 9/30/04	10	15	-	25
Cases filed during FY 2005	7	21	-	28
Disposals, total	12	23	-	35
Affirmed	1	10	-	11
Reversed	-	2	-	2
Remanded	5	1	-	6
Dismissed	6	9	-	15
Amicus/intervene	-	-	-	-
Transferred	-	1	-	1
<b>Total inter partes cases pending as of 9/30/05</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Total United States Courts of Appeals cases pending as of 9/30/05</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Supreme Court</b>				
<b>Ex parte cases</b>				
Cases pending as of 9/30/04	1	-	-	1
Cases filed during FY 2005	3	-	-	3
Disposals, total	1	-	-	1
<b>Cases pending as of 9/30/05, total</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Notices of Suit filed in FY 2005</b>	<b>2,115</b>	<b>1,766</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>3,881</b>

- Represents zero.

<sup>1</sup> Includes Federal Circuit and others.

TABLE 26

PATENT CLASSIFICATION ACTIVITY  
(FY 2001 - FY 2005)

ACTIVITY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Original patents professionally reclassified - completed projects	39,209	19,621	10,802	20,370	12,170
Subclasses established	1,878	780	2,023	552	496
<b>Reclassified patents clerically processed, total</b>	<b>135,877</b>	<b>52,023</b>	<b>205,476</b>	<b>58,738</b>	<b>50,932</b>
Original U.S. patents	51,266	13,155	16,202	20,555	16,572
Cross-reference U.S. patents	84,611	38,868	189,274 <sup>1</sup>	38,183	34,360

<sup>1</sup> FY 2003 cross-reference U.S. patents includes 1,700 EULA based subclasses that were added to the semiconductor classes in USPC.

**TABLE 27**

**SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL INFORMATION CENTER ACTIVITY  
(FY 2005)**

ACTIVITY	QUANTITY
<b>Prior Art Search Services Provided:</b>	
Automated Prior Art Searches Completed	31,824
On-line and Manual Foreign Patent Searches Completed	3,467
Genetic Sequence Searches Completed	11,752
Number of Genetic Sequences Searched	38,051
CRF Submissions Processed	15,525
PLUS Searches Completed	18,987
<b>Document Delivery Services Provided:</b>	
Document Delivery/Interlibrary Loan Requests Processed	44,646
Copies of Foreign Patents Provided:	5,674
Copies Purchased by the Public	751
Copies Provided to USPTO Staff	4,823
Foreign Patents Provided Using Electronic Tools	5,175
<b>Information Assistance and Automation Services:</b>	
One-on-One Examiner Information Assistance	17,212
One-on-One Examiner Automation Assistance	11,200
Patents Employees Attending Automation Classes	7,881
Foreign Patents Assistance for Examiners and Public	5,196
Examiner Briefings on STIC Information Sources and Services	4,445
Number of STIC Web pages	1,125
<b>Translation Services Provided for Examiners:</b>	
Written Translations of Documents	6,436
Number of Words Translated (Written)	17,436,111
Documents Orally Translated	6,299
<b>Total Number of Examiner Service Contacts</b>	<b>164,881</b>
<b>Collection Usage and Growth:</b>	
Print/Electronic (NPL) Collection Usage	1,053,975
Print Books/Subscriptions Purchased	36,760
Full Text Electronic Journal Titles Available	11,868
Full Text Electronic Book Titles Available	6,151
NPL Databases Available for Searching (est.)	1,510
Foreign Patent Databases/Web Sites Accessed	85



TABLE 28

END OF YEAR PERSONNEL  
(FY 2001 - FY 2005)

ACTIVITY	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
<b>Business</b>					
Patent Business Line	5,454	6,045	5,990	6,060	6,494
Trademark Business Line	972	894	733	756	869
Total USPTO	6,426	6,939	6,723	6,816	7,363
<b>Examination Staff</b>					
Patent Examiners					
UPR Examiners	3,061	3,538	3,579	3,681	4,177
Design Examiners	60	58	58	72	81
Total UPR and D Examiners	3,121	3,596	3,637	3,753	4,258
Trademark Examining Attorneys	389	258	256	286	357

# Glossary of Acronyms and Abbreviation List





<b>ABC</b>	Activity-Based Cost Accounting	<b>FERS</b>	Federal Employees Retirement System
<b>ABM</b>	Activity-Based Management	<b>FDA</b>	Food and Drug Administration
<b>AIPA</b>	American Inventors Protection Act	<b>FFMIA</b>	Federal Financial Management Improvement Act
<b>ASEAN</b>	Association of South East Asian Nations	<b>FICA</b>	Federal Insurance Contributions Act
<b>BPAI</b>	Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences	<b>FMFIA</b>	Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act
<b>CBP</b>	Customs and Border Protection	<b>FMS</b>	Financial Management Services
<b>CCR</b>	Central Contractor Registration	<b>FTA</b>	Free Trade Agreement
<b>CEAR</b>	Certificate of Excellence in Accountability Reporting	<b>FY</b>	Fiscal year
<b>CRU</b>	Central Reexam Unit	<b>GAAP</b>	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
<b>CSRS</b>	Civil Service Retirement System	<b>GAO</b>	Government Accountability Office
<b>DOC</b>	Department of Commerce	<b>GI</b>	Geographical indication
<b>DOL</b>	U.S. Department of Labor	<b>GPRA</b>	Government Performance and Results Act
<b>eDAN</b>	IFW interface system	<b>IFW</b>	Image File Wrapper
<b>EAST</b>	Examiner Automated Search System	<b>IG</b>	Inspector General
<b>EFS</b>	Electronic File System	<b>IIPi</b>	International Intellectual Property Institute
<b>EFT</b>	Electronic Funds Transfer	<b>INL</b>	International Narcotics and Law Enforcement Affairs
<b>EPO</b>	European Patent Office	<b>IP</b>	Intellectual property
<b>FAS</b>	Foreign Agricultural Service	<b>IPR</b>	Intellectual property rights
<b>FASAB</b>	Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board	<b>IT</b>	Information technology
<b>FECA</b>	Federal Employees Compensation Act	<b>JCCT</b>	Joint Commission on Commerce and Trade
<b>FEGLI</b>	Federal Employees Group Life Insurance	<b>JPO</b>	Japan Patent Office
<b>FEHB</b>	Federal Employees Health Benefit Program	<b>MEPI</b>	Middle East Partnership Initiative



<b>MTS</b>	Metric Tracking System	<b>SIPO</b>	State Intellectual Property Office
<b>OACS</b>	Office Action Correspondence System	<b>SIRA</b>	Search and Information Resources Administration
<b>OBRA</b>	Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act	<b>STOP!</b>	Strategy Targeting Organized Piracy!
<b>OED</b>	Office of Enrollment and Discipline	<b>TC</b>	Technology Centers
<b>OHIM</b>	Office for Harmonization in the Internal Market	<b>TDA</b>	Trilateral Document Access
<b>OHR</b>	Office of Human Resources	<b>TDR</b>	Trademark Document Retrieval
<b>OIG</b>	Office of the Inspector General	<b>TEAS</b>	Trademark Electronic Application System
<b>OIPE</b>	Office of Initial Patent Examination	<b>TLT</b>	Trademark Law Treaty
<b>OIR</b>	Office of International Relations	<b>TRAM</b>	Trademark Reporting And Monitoring
<b>OMB</b>	Office of Management and Budget	<b>TRIPs</b>	Trade Related Aspects of Intellectual Property
<b>OPF</b>	Official Personnel Files	<b>TTAB</b>	Trademark Trial and Appeal Board
<b>PAIR</b>	Patent Application Information Retrieval	<b>U.S.C.</b>	United States Code
<b>PALM</b>	Patent Application Location and Monitoring	<b>UDRP</b>	Uniform Domain Name Dispute Resolution Policy
<b>PAR</b>	Performance and Accountability Report	<b>UNECE</b>	United Nations Economic Commission for Europe
<b>PCT</b>	Patent Cooperation Treaty	<b>UPR</b>	Utility, Plant, and Reissue
<b>PMA</b>	President's Management Agenda	<b>USPTO</b>	United States Patent and Trademark Office
<b>S&amp;T</b>	Science and technology	<b>USTR</b>	United States Trade Representative
<b>SCCRR</b>	Standing Committee on Copyright and Related Rights	<b>WCT</b>	WIPO Copyright Treaty
<b>SCORE</b>	Supplemental Complex Repository for Examiners	<b>WIPO</b>	World Intellectual Property Organization
<b>SCP</b>	Standing Committee on the Law of Patents	<b>WPPT</b>	WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty
<b>SFFAC</b>	Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts	<b>WTO</b>	World Trade Organization
<b>SFFAS</b>	Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards		

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS



**T**his Performance and Accountability Report was produced with the energies and talents of the USPTO staff. To these individuals we would like to offer our sincerest thanks and acknowledgement.

In particular, we would like to recognize the following organizations and individuals for their contributions:

Office of Corporate Planning – Jack Buie, Melissa Stagnaro, Narryn Fisher, Walter Schlueter and Gerard Torres; Office of Finance – Michelle Picard, Dennis Detar, Shana Dowling, Jeanette Kuendel, Candace Yu, Mariam Hooks, Mark Krieger, Britt Fucito, Thao Cicala, and John Yandziak; Office of Public Affairs – Richard Maulsby and Michael Lee; Patents – Karen Young, John Mielcarek and Nancy Savage; Trademarks – Karen Strohecker and Robert Allen; Office of External Affairs – Talis Dzenitis and Peggy Orser; Office of the CIO – Susan Callis, Paul Harrison and Jim Hirabayashi; Office of General Counsel – James Toupin, Mary Kelly, John Whealan, J. David Sams, Gary Harkcom, Merrell Cashion and Mike Briskin; Office of Administrative Services – Calvin Holloway; Office of Procurement – Kate Kudrewicz; Office of the Director – Beth Gibson, Eleanor Meltzer and Norma Rose; Deva & Associates, P.C., and Grant Thornton LLP.

We would also like to acknowledge the Office of the Inspector General and KPMG LLP for the professional manner in which they conducted the audit of the FY 2005 Financial Statements.

We offer special thanks to Bob Shimshock of AOC Solutions, Inc. and to Michael James and Sheri Beauregard of The DesignPond for their outstanding contributions in the design and production of this report.

To send comments or get additional information about this report please contact Melissa Stagnaro.  
600 Dulany Street, Alexandria, VA 22314  
[melissa.stagnaro@uspto.gov](mailto:melissa.stagnaro@uspto.gov)  
Phone: 571-272-6303  
Fax: 571-273-0127





UNITED STATES  
PATENT AND  
TRADEMARK OFFICE

*An Agency of the United States Department of Commerce*

***[www.uspto.gov](http://www.uspto.gov)***







## UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS  
UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
P.O. Box 1450  
ALEXANDRIA, VA 22313-1450  
www.uspto.gov

Ex Parte Reexamination Filing Data - March 31, 2004

1. Total requests filed since start of ex parte reexam on 07/01/81 ..... 6988

a. By patent owner	2974	43%
b. By other member of public	3849	55%
c. By order of Commissioner	165	2%

2. Number of filings by discipline

a. Chemical Operation	2216	32%
b. Electrical Operation	2182	31%
c. Mechanical Operation	2590	37%

3. Annual Ex Parte Reexam Filings

Fiscal Yr.	No.	Fiscal Yr.	No.	Fiscal Yr.	No.
1981	78 (3 mos.)	1989	243	1997	376
1982	187	1990	297	1998	350
1983	186	1991	307	1999	385
1984	189	1992	392	2000	318
1985	230	1993	359	2001	296
1986	232	1994	379	2002	272
1987	240	1995	392	2003	392
1988	268	1996	418	2004	202 YTD

4. Number known to be in litigation ..... 1455 21%

5. Determinations on requests ..... 6771

a. No. granted ..... 6136 ..... 91%

(1) By examiner	6031
(2) By Director (on petition)	105

b. No. denied ..... 635 ..... 9%

(1) By examiner	601
(2) Order vacated	34

6. Total examiner denials (includes denials reversed by Director) .....	706			
a. Patent owner requester	410		58%	
b. Third party requester	296		42%	
7. Overall reexamination pendency (Filing date to certificate issue date)				
a. Average pendency	21.4 (mos.)			
b. Median pendency	16.8 (mos.)			
8. Reexam certificate claim analysis:				
	<u>Owner</u>	<u>3rd Party</u>	<u>Comm'r</u>	<u>Overall</u>
	<u>Requester</u>	<u>Requester</u>	<u>Initiated</u>	
a. All claims confirmed	23%	30%	13%	26%
b. All claims cancelled	7%	12%	19%	10%
c. Claims changes	70%	58%	68%	64%
9. Total ex parte reexamination certificates issued (1981 - present) .....	4853			
a. Certificates with all claims confirmed	1287		26%	
b. Certificates with all claims canceled	483		10%	
c. Certificates with claims changes	3083		64%	
10. Reexam claim analysis - requester is patent owner or 3rd party; or Comm'r initiated.				
a. Certificates _ PATENT OWNER REQUESTER .....	2150			
(1) All claims confirmed	499		23%	
(2) All claims canceled	154		7%	
(3) Claim changes	1497		70%	
b. Certificates _ 3rd PARTY REQUESTER .....	2574			
(1) All claims confirmed	771		30%	
(2) All claims canceled	305		12%	
(3) Claim changes	1498		58%	
c. Certificates _ COMM'R INITIATED REEXAM .....	129			
(1) All claims confirmed	17		13%	
(2) All claims canceled	24		19%	
(3) Claim changes	88		68%	







at issue is an apparatus that uses computer memory and digital communication to permit remote control "rotation of a monitoring television camera in the horizontal and vertical directions." U.S. Patent No. 4,974,088, Column 1:6-8. The patent was originally assigned to Maruwa Electronic & Chemical Company. ("Maruwa"). Maruwa assigned the patent to Lectrolarm. Lectrolarm alleges that the defendants have infringed the '088 patent.<sup>1</sup>

On January 28, 2005, Vicon filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office (the "PTO") a request for reexamination of the '088 Patent. (Def.'s Mem. at 1.) The request for reexamination is based on prior art consisting of printed publications for two products: the VPS1200 system made by Vicon and the SensorVision product made by Sensormatic Electronics Corporation ("Sensormatic"). (Id. at 4.) This prior art was not considered by the PTO when it granted the '088 Patent, although both products, and presumably the publications describing them, have been available for over 15 years. (Pl.'s Resp. at 3.) The prior art products described in these publications are also the subject of two summary judgment motions for invalidity that were filed in this case on September 24, 2004, and November 19, 2004. Both Vicon and Sensormatic contended in letters to Lectrolarm in 2000 that these publications are invalidating prior art. (Id. at 4 (citing letters between the parties' attorneys).)

---

<sup>1</sup> Originally there were fourteen defendants; four remain.

The PTO granted Vicon's request for reexamination of the '088 Patent. (Def.'s Reply Brief.) The PTO found "a substantial likelihood that a reasonable examiner would consider the teachings of the newly cited prior art important in deciding whether or not the claims are patentable." (Laurenzi Dec., Ex. A at 2.)

The complaint in this case was filed on May 8, 2003. A trial date of September 19, 2005, was set on November 30, 2004. Discovery concerning expert witnesses closed on May 6, 2005, and fact discovery closed on January 17, 2005. Lectrolarm estimates that over \$10 million has been spent by the defendants litigating this suit so far. (Pl.'s Resp. at 5.)

## **II. Patent Reexamination Background**

"Any person at any time may file a request for reexamination by the [Patent] Office of any claim of a patent. . . ." 35 U.S.C. § 302. A reexamination request may only be based on "prior art consisting of patents or printed publications." 35 U.S.C. § 301. "Within three months following the filing of a request for reexamination . . . the Director will determine whether a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent concerned is raised by the request." 35 U.S.C. § 303(a). "If . . . a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of a patent is raised, the determination will include an order for reexamination of the patent. . . . The patent owner will be given . . . not less than two months . . . within which he may

file a statement on such question. . . . [The person who requested reexamination then has two months to] file and have considered in the reexamination a reply to any statement filed by the patent owner." 35 U.S.C. § 304.

If, however, litigation has been stayed for the filing of a reexamination request, the examination following the statement by the patent owner and the reply by the requester "will be expedited to the extent possible."<sup>2</sup> M.P.E.P. § 2286. Office actions in these reexamination proceedings will normally set a shorter one-month statutory period for response rather than the two months usually set in reexamination proceedings. Id.

"After the times for filing the statement and reply . . . have expired, reexamination will be conducted according to the procedures established for initial examination. . . ." 35 U.S.C.A. § 305. The patent owner may appeal . . . and may seek court review . . . [of] any decision adverse to the patentability of any original or proposed amended or new claim of the patent [as provided by the patent statute for appeal and court review of initial patent examination proceedings]." 35 U.S.C. § 306. "All reexamination proceedings . . . including any appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special

---

<sup>2</sup>The M.P.E.P. regulations actually state that the reexamination proceedings will be expedited if the request for reexamination indicates that litigation has been stayed. The court assumes that if the PTO is informed that litigation has been stayed after the request for reexamination was filed the examiner will adopt the expedited time table.

dispatch within the Office." 35 U.S.C. § 305. "[W]hen the time for appeal has expired or any appeal proceeding has terminated, the Director will issue and publish a certificate canceling any claim of the patent finally determined to be unpatentable, confirming any claim of the patent determined to be patentable, and incorporating in the patent any proposed amended or new claim determined to be patentable." 35 U.S.C. § 307(a).

"Congress intended the reexamination process to provide an efficient and relatively inexpensive procedure for reviewing the validity of patents which would employ the PTO's expertise." Ethicon, Inc. v. Quigg, 849 F.2d 1422, 1426 (Fed. Cir. 1988). Reexamination permits "efficient resolution of questions about the validity of issued patents without recourse to expensive and lengthy infringement litigation" and allows the validity of a patent to be "tested in the Patent office where the most expert opinions exist." H.Rep. 1307(I), 96th Cong., 2d Sess. 4, reprinted in 1980 U.S. Code Cong. & Admin. News 6460, 6463.

### III. Analysis

The decision to stay a case pending the conclusion of a patent reexamination is at the discretion of the trial court. Ethicon, Inc. v. Quigg, 849 F.2d 1422, 1426-27 (Fed. Cir. 1988) (citing Landis v. North American Co., 299 U.S. 248, 254 (1936)). Courts have found that issuing a stay pending the outcome of a reexamination has many advantages, including:



1. All prior art presented to the Court will have been first considered by the PTO, with its particular expertise.
2. Many discovery problems relating to prior art can be alleviated by the PTO examination.
3. In those cases resulting in effective invalidity of the patent, the suit will likely be dismissed.
4. The outcome of the reexamination may encourage a settlement without the further use of the Court.
5. The record of reexamination would likely be entered at trial, thereby reducing the complexity and length of the litigation.
6. Issues, defenses, and evidence will be more easily limited in pre-trial conferences after a reexamination.
7. The cost will likely be reduced both for the parties and the Court.

See, e.g., Ralph Gonnocci Revocable Living Trust v. Three M Tool & Machine Inc., 68 U.S.P.Q.2d 1755, 1757 (E.D. Mich. 2003). Thus, reexamination by the Patent Office, "if available and practical, should be deferred to by the courts, especially where the infringement litigation is in the early stages." Gonnocci, 68 U.S.P.Q.2d at 1757; see also Softview Computer Prods. Corp. v. Haworth, Inc., 56 U.S.P.Q.2d 1633, 1635 (S.D.N.Y. 2000). But, "[p]arties should not be permitted to abuse the process by applying for reexamination after protracted, expensive discovery or trial preparation." Softview, 56 U.S.P.Q.2d at 1635.

"In determining whether to stay litigation pending reexamination by the PTO, courts generally consider the following factors: (1) whether a stay would unduly prejudice or present a

clear tactical disadvantage to the non-moving party;<sup>3</sup> (2) whether a stay will simplify the issues in question and trial of the case; and (3) whether discovery is complete and whether a trial date has been set." Xerox Corp. v. 3Com Corp., 69 F.Supp.2d 404, 406-07 (W.D.N.Y. 1999); see also Target Therapeutics, Inc. v. SciMed Life Systems, Inc., 1995 WL 20470 (N.D. Cal. 1995); GPAC, Inc. v. DWW Enterprises, Inc., 144 F.R.D. 60, 66 (D.N.J. 1992); United Sweetener USA, Inc. v. Nutrasweet Co., 766 F.Supp. 212, 217 (D. Del. 1991).

The Defendants argue that a stay should be granted based on the second factor: whether a stay will simplify the issues in question and trial of the case. Granting the Defendants' motion could simplify the issues before the court because the PTO could invalidate all the claims. The parties have presented data showing that slightly more than 10% of completed reexaminations requested by a third party result in cancellation of all claims at issue. (Def.'s Mem., Ex. H (Ex Parte Reexamination Filing Data-March 31, 2004).) The data also shows that 30% of completed reexaminations requested by third parties result in confirmation of all claims.

---

<sup>3</sup> The court does not address this factor in the body of the opinion because it is inconclusive. The Defendants argue convincingly that Lectrolarm seeks only money damages so Lectrolarm would not be prejudiced if the trial were delayed. Lectrolarm argues, also convincingly, that because discovery is essentially complete, and the average time for a reexamination is roughly one and a half years, staying the case would require expensive discovery to account for factual developments that occurred during the reexamination. To the extent that this factor weighs in either party's favor it is in Lectrolarm's. Because the court finds that the Defendants delayed requesting reexamination and could have prevented any prejudice to Lectrolarm by requesting reexamination in a more timely fashion, any prejudice to Lectrolarm should be avoided.

(Id.) In slightly fewer than 60% of these types of reexaminations the claims are modified in some way, but not all claims are cancelled. Based on this data, there is roughly a 70% chance that granting a stay will prevent the court from having to consider the effect modifications made by the PTO may have on the court's orders.<sup>4</sup>

The facts of this case, however, suggest that it is unlikely that the PTO will rule in the Defendants' favor because the request for reexamination appears to be motivated more by a desire for tactical delay than a belief that the prior art cited in the reexamination request is invalidating. If the Defendants had truly believed that this prior art invalidates some or all of the '088 Patent's claims, it seems likely that the Defendants would have requested reexamination one and a half years ago, before spending millions of dollars on litigation. Further, reexamination only deals with invalidity from printed prior art. Unless all claims were invalidated, a result that has a one-in-ten probability, this court would still need to deal with issues concerning other types of prior art, liability, and damages.

Analysis of the third factor, whether discovery is complete and whether a trial date has been set, points towards denying

---

<sup>4</sup> Even if no changes to the claim language result, the issues before the court would be simplified because the PTO's assessment of the prior art in the reexamination request would prevent the court from having to decide parts of the two summary judgment motions based on that prior art. The court, however, would still need to consider the sale or offer-for-sale portions of those motions.

Vicon's motion to stay. At the time the request for reexamination was filed, on January 28, 2005, a trial date of September 19, 2005, had been set on November 30, 2004, and fact discovery had closed on January 17, 2005.<sup>5</sup> Thus, Vicon's request for reexamination was filed at the close of fact discovery, over a year and a half after the complaint in this case had been filed and two months after a trial date had been set.

When a petition for reexamination is filed after a trial date has been set, extensive discovery has been conducted, and the reexamination does not involve newly discovered prior art, courts uniformly refuse to stay the case pending reexamination. See, e.g., Xerox, 69 F.Supp.2d 404 (refusing to grant a stay where a request for reexamination was filed one and a half years into a lawsuit, six months before discovery was to close, and there was evidence that the defendant had known of the allegedly invalidating prior art eight months before filing the request); Galdish v. Tyco Toys, Inc., 1993 WL 625509 (E.D. Cal. Sept. 15, 1993) (refusing to grant a stay where there was evidence that the party requesting reexamination had known about the prior art in question for six months before filing the reexamination request); Remington Arms Co., Inc. v. Modern Muzzleloading, Inc., 1998 WL 1037920 (M.D.N.C.

---

<sup>5</sup> The September 19, 2005, trial date will need to be reset. This fact, however, has no bearing on the court's analysis of the third factor considered in deciding whether to stay litigation pending reexamination because the court's main concern is whether the reexamination process is being abused. See Softview, 56 U.S.P.Q.2d at 1635. Thus, the relevant trial date is the date set when the reexamination request was filed, not the date the trial actually occurs.



Dec. 17, 1998) (finding that the "most compelling reason for denying the stay" was the "unjustified delay" in requesting reexamination more than three months after learning of the allegedly invalidating prior art). Output Technology Corp. v. Dataproducts Corp., 22 U.S.P.Q.2d 1072 (W.D. Wash. 1991) (denying a motion to stay pending reexamination when discovery was scheduled for completion in four months and trial was scheduled in less than nine months); Accent Designs, Inc. v. Jan Jewelry Designs, Inc., 1994 WL 121673, at \*3 (S.D.N.Y. Apr. 6, 1994) ("in a case such as this, in which multiple opinions have been issued, discovery is well under way and no prejudice to either party is likely to ensue, there is simply no justification for further delay in the action").

The Defendants cite a number of cases for the proposition that stays for reexamination are routinely granted by trial courts after extensive litigation has already occurred. All cases that the defendants cite in support of this proposition, however, are readily distinguishable. In Gonnocci, 68 U.S.P.Q.2d 1755, the court granted a stay after extensive discovery had been conducted and a trial date had been set. The court, however, explicitly stated that it could not find that the party seeking reexamination had delayed because nothing in the record indicated when that party had become aware of the allegedly invalidating prior art. Id. at 1758. In this case it is undisputed that the Defendants were aware of the prior art cited in their request for reexamination and its relevance to

Lectrolarm's claim of infringement at least five years before they filed their request. Similarly, the court's decision to grant a stay one month before trial in Robert H. Harris Co., Inc. v. Metal Mfg. Co., Inc., 19 U.S.P.Q.2d 1786 (E.D. Ark. 1991), can be distinguished because the court found that the parties had not participated in protracted or expensive discovery and the prior art cited in the reexamination request was "recently discovered." Id. at 1788-89. Likewise, in Grayling Industries, Inc. v. GPAC, Inc., 19 U.S.P.Q.2d 1872 (N.D. Ga. 1991), "the prior art on which the petition [for reexamination was] based was uncovered during discovery." Id. at 1874. Finally, Middleton, Inc. v. Minnesota Mining and Mfg. Co., 2004 WL 1968669 (S.D. Iowa Aug. 24, 2004), is distinguishable because the court's grant of a stay after 8 years of litigation was motivated by the fact that the validity of the patent that was the subject of the reexamination had only recently become an issue in the case.<sup>6</sup>

Finally, and most significantly, granting Vicon's motion to stay would impermissibly permit Vicon to abuse the reexamination process. The Defendants were aware of the allegedly invalidating prior art that is central to their request for reexamination long before they actually submitted the request to the PTO. The prior art cited in the reexamination request forms the basis of two

---

<sup>6</sup> The defendants also cite Snyder Seed Corp. v. Scrypton Systems, Inc., 52 U.S.P.Q.2d 1221 (W.D.N.Y. 1999). In that case, however, the court granted a stay because "[n]o discovery has been conducted. In fact, no scheduling order has been entered." Id. at 1224.

summary judgment motions filed with this court on September 24, 2004, and November 19, 2004. In fact, defendants Sensormatic and Vicon alleged in 2000 that this prior art anticipated the '088 Patent. (Pl.'s Resp., Ex. 4, 5 (Letters dated in 2000 from Vicon and Sensormatic respectively alleging that the VPS 1200 Instruction Manual and a brochure for the SensorVision System are prior art that invalidate the '088 Patent).) There is no reason that Vicon could not have requested a reexamination months or years earlier. Consequently, staying the case at this point in the litigation would permit Vicon to "abuse the process by applying for reexamination after protracted, expensive discovery or trial preparation." Softview, 56 U.S.P.Q.2d at 1635.

Not staying the case pending reexamination raises one additional issue: the possibility that this court and the PTO will render contradictory decisions. The Federal Circuit has held that inconsistency between the two forums is not a serious concern:

The awkwardness presumed to result if the PTO and court reached different conclusions is more apparent than real. The two forums take different approaches in determining invalidity and on the same evidence could quite correctly come to different conclusions. . . . Once again, it is important that the district court and the PTO can consider different evidence. Accordingly, different result between the two forums may be entirely reasonable.

Ethicon, 849 F.2d at 1428.

The easier course for the court would be to stay the action. That, however, would reward the Defendants' unexplained, and seemingly unexplainable, delay in filing the reexamination request.

As the court in Enprotech Corp. v. Autotech Corp., 15 U.S.P.Q.2d 1319 (N.D. Ill. 1990) stated, "[w]e are too far along the road to justify halting the journey while the defendant explores an alternate route. The motion to stay is denied." Id. at 1320.

The Defendants have also requested an oral argument on the motion to stay. The law is clear: a decision to grant a stay is at the discretion of the trial court based on the facts before the court. The court's decision to deny the motion to stay is based largely on the fact that the Defendants have alleged for five years that the prior art cited in the reexamination request is invalidating, but waited until the close of fact discovery to request reexamination. This fact is uncontroverted. Letters between the parties in 2000 show that, from the moment a lawsuit was threatened, Vicon and Sensormatic alleged that this prior art could be used as a defense to Lectrolarm's infringement claims. Because the legal issues are clearly identified, and the key facts are uncontested, the court finds that holding an oral argument on the motion to stay would be unproductive.



**VI. Conclusion**

For the foregoing reasons, defendant Vicon's motion to stay on behalf of all defendants is DENIED.

So ORDERED this 1st day of September 2005.



SAMUEL H. MAYS, JR.  
UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE



1 Teresa M. Corbin (SBN 132360)  
2 Christopher Kelley (SBN 166608)  
3 Thomas Mavrakakis (SBN 177927)  
4 Matthew Hocker (SBN 188546)  
5 Erik M. Moller (SBN 147674)  
6 Louis Campbell (SBN 221282)  
7 Katharine Altemus (SBN 227082)  
8 HOWREY SIMON ARNOLD & WHITE, LLP  
9 301 Ravenswood Avenue  
10 Menlo Park, California 94025  
11 Telephone: (650) 463-8100  
12 Facsimile: (650) 463-8400

13 Attorneys for Plaintiff  
14 SYNOPSISYS, INC. and for Defendants  
15 AEROFLEX, INC.,  
16 AMI SEMICONDUCTOR, INC.,  
17 MATROX ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS LTD.,  
18 MATROX GRAPHICS INC.,  
19 MATROX INTERNATIONAL CORP., and  
20 MATROX TECH, INC.

21 UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
22 NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA  
23 SAN FRANCISCO DIVISION

24 RICOH COMPANY, LTD.,

25 Plaintiff,

26 vs.

27 AEROFLEX INCORPORATED, et al.,

28 Defendants.

SYNOPSISYS, INC.,

Plaintiff,

vs.

RICOH COMPANY, LTD.,

Defendant.

Case No. C-03-4669 MJJ (EMC)  
Case No. C-03-2289 MJJ (EMC)

**SUPPLEMENTAL PRELIMINARY  
INVALIDITY CONTENTIONS OF  
SYNOPSISYS AND THE CUSTOMER  
DEFENDANTS PURSUANT TO PATENT  
L.R. 3-3 AND  
L.R. 3-4**

Pursuant to Rule 3-3 of the Patent Local Rules of Practice in Civil Proceedings before the United States District Court for the Northern District of California ("Patent L.R."), Synopsys, Inc. ("Synopsys") and Defendants Aeroflex, Inc., AMI Semiconductor Inc., Matrox Electronic Systems, Ltd., Matrox Graphics Inc., Matrox International Corp., and Matrox Tech, Inc. (collectively "Defendants") submit the following Supplemental Preliminary Invalidity Contentions ("Invalidity Contentions") in response to the Disclosure of Asserted Claims and Preliminary Infringement Contentions ("Infringement Contentions") submitted by plaintiff Ricoh Company, Ltd. ("Rico").

- Exhibits 1 through 19 provide Synopsys' and the Defendants' disclosure pursuant to Patent L.R. 3-3(c) for United States Patent No. 4,922,432 (the "'432 patent").
- The remainder of Synopsys' and the Defendants' disclosure pursuant to Patent L.R. 3-3(a), (b), (c), and their disclosure under subsection (d) for the '432 patent are contained herein.

Synopsys and Defendants base these Invalidity Contentions on their current knowledge, understanding, and belief as to the facts and information available as of the date of these contentions. Further, Synopsys and Defendants supplement these preliminary contentions with the understanding that by stipulation of the parties only claims 13-17 of the '432 patent remain in suit. Synopsys and Defendants have not yet completed their investigation, collection of information, discovery, or analysis relating to this action, and additional discovery may require them to supplement, amend and/or modify these contentions. More specifically, Ricoh has not produced all of the information responsive to Synopsys' discovery requests. Synopsys and the Defendants also have had the opportunity to take only a partial deposition of one of the named inventors of the '432 patent, and/or none of the other persons potentially having relevant information. Synopsys and the Defendants also continue to search for additional invalidating prior art for the asserted claims of the '432 patent. Consequently, based upon a showing of good cause, Synopsys and the Defendants may subsequently seek an order from the Court allowing it to amend, modify, or supplement these contentions within a reasonable time after the discovery of any additional invalidating prior art.



1        These supplemental preliminary invalidity contentions are presented in response to Ricoh's  
2 supplementation of its own preliminary infringement allegations. To the extent that Synopsys and  
3 the Defendants have been able to ascertain an infringement theory from Ricoh's supplemented  
4 preliminary infringement contentions, these supplemental preliminary invalidity contentions provide  
5 an explanation of how the asserted claims of Ricoh's patent would be anticipated under the  
6 construction that Ricoh appears to be proposing in its supplemented preliminary infringement  
7 contentions. It should be noted that these claim constructions / infringement theories are based on  
8 our present understanding of Ricoh's supplemental preliminary infringement contentions and do not  
9 necessarily reflect Synopsys or the Defendants' view as to the proper construction of any claim  
10 element.

11        Ricoh's supplemented preliminary infringement contentions still provide little detailed  
12 information about Ricoh's constructions of the asserted claims. If and when Ricoh serves  
13 contentions that provide a complete disclosure of Ricoh's infringement theories, Synopsys and the  
14 Defendants may amend, modify, and/or supplement their Preliminary Invalidity Contentions, to  
15 respond to the additional information about Ricoh's infringement theory.

16        Synopsys' and the Defendants' ultimate contentions concerning the validity of the '432 patent  
17 claims may also change based upon the Court's construction of the claims and/or positions that  
18 Ricoh may take concerning claim construction, infringement, and/or validity issues.

19        The accompanying documents as well as the information provided below and in the Exhibits  
20 is provided for Synopsys' and the Defendants' compliance with Patent Local Rules 3-3 and 3-4 only.  
21 The information provided shall not be deemed an admission regarding the scope of any claims or the  
22 proper construction of those claims or any terms contained therein. The fact that documents have  
23 been identified below and produced with these Invalidity Contentions shall not be deemed an  
24 admission that such documents are admissible and/or that Synopsys and the Defendants have waived  
25 any objections regarding the admissibility of such documents.

**DISCLOSURES UNDER PATENT L.R. 3-3(D)****I. INVALIDITY OF '432 PATENT UNDER 35 U.S.C. § 112****A. Knowledge Base Not Adequately Disclosed**

The '432 patent fails to meet the "enablement" requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112, because the '432 specification does not provide an explanation or disclosure of the expert system rules used by the described CAD system sufficient to allow one of ordinary skill in the art to build the expert system knowledge base referred to by the patent specification. The path synthesizer and cell selector (PSCS) software described in the specification relies on this knowledge base to perform a variety of functions critical to successful operation of the system. *See, e.g.*, '432 patent, col.2 ll.58-63, col.4 ll.63-66, col.5 ll.6-8, col.5 ll.25-30, col.8 ll.21-30, col.8 l.65 – col.9 l.5, col.9 l.65 – col.10 l.12.

In particular, the '432 patent fails to provide sufficient information to allow one of ordinary skill in the art to implement an expert system knowledge base capable of performing: (1) selection of macros, (2) merging two macros, (3) mapping of macros to cells, (4) merging two cell, (5) error diagnostics. *See* '432 patent, col.8 l.65 – col.9 l.5. The '432 patent also fails to provide sufficient information to allow one of ordinary skill in the art to implement an expert system knowledge base capable of performing: (1) data path synthesis, (2) data path optimization, (3) macro definitions, (4) cell library, and (5) error detection and correction. *See* '432 patent, col.10 ll.1-7.

The failure to adequately describe the Knowledge Base may additionally constitute a violation of the written description and/or best mode requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 112. The applicants claimed to have a working copy of the KBSC software that is the subject of the '432 patent, but provided insufficient disclosure of the knowledge base. The operation of the Knowledge Base is implicated in at least the claim terms "expert system knowledge base," "knowledge base," "cell selection rules," "rules for selecting hardware cells," "data path rules," "generating control paths," "generating data paths," "cell selection means," "netlist generator means," "expert system means," "inference engine means," "generator means," the "selecting" step of claim 13, the "applying" steps of claims 18 and 19, and the "generating" steps of claims 15, 16, 17 and 20.

1 Each and every claim of the '432 patent is invalid as consequence of the inadequate  
2 disclosure described under this heading.

3 **B. System Controller Generation Not Adequately Disclosed**

4 The '432 patent fails to meet the "enablement" requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112, because the  
5 '432 specification does not provide an explanation of how the described CAD system generates a  
6 system controller sufficient to allow one of ordinary skill in the art to build such a CAD system. The  
7 generation of a system controller is an essential element of the described CAD system. *See, e.g.,*  
8 '432 patent, col.1 ll.26-32, col.2 ll.40-42, col.4 ll.39-43, col.5 ll.9-13, col.6 ll.18-27, col.11 ll.49-51.

9 The failure to adequately describe the method used for system controller generation may  
10 additionally constitute a violation of the written description and/or best mode requirements of 35  
11 U.S.C. § 112. The applicants claimed to have a working copy of the KBSC software that is the  
12 subject of the '432 patent, but provided insufficient disclosure of the system controller generator.  
13 System controller generation is implicated in at least the claim terms "control generator means," and  
14 the steps of "generating control paths," and "generating a controller" found in claims 17 and 20.

15 Each and every claim of the '432 patent is invalid as consequence of the inadequate  
16 disclosure described under this heading.

17 **C. Inference Engine Not Adequately Disclosed**

18 The '432 patent fails to meet the "enablement" requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112, because the  
19 '432 specification does not provide an explanation of the inference engine required by the described  
20 CAD system sufficient to allow one of ordinary skill to build such an engine. The '432 specification  
21 states that the rules interpreted by the engine must include: knowledge representation in the form of a  
22 record structure, conditional expressions in the antecedent of a rule, a facility to create and destroy  
23 structure in rule action and other capabilities. *See* '432 patent, col.10 ll.56-67. The patent  
24 specification does not provide any explanation of how to implement these required capabilities and  
25 the example rules provided do not provide any guidance since they are described in high level  
26 English rather than in the form that they would actually have to take in an operable system.

1 In addition, the '432 patent fails to describe how contexts are used during the operation of the  
2 PSCS software. The specification describes that contexts are required and that there can be context  
3 changes. *See* '432 patent, col.10 ll.13-37. The '432 specification, however, provides no information  
4 about how context changes are made and the relationship between contexts and the particular  
5 functions that the specification states are performed by the PSCS software. As a result, the patent  
6 specification does not provide sufficient information to enable one of ordinary skill in the art to build  
7 the system described in the specification.

8 The failure to adequately describe the design of the inference engine may additionally  
9 constitute a violation of the written description and/or best mode requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 112.  
10 The applicants claimed to have a working copy of the KBSC software that is the subject of the '432  
11 patent, but provided insufficient disclosure of the inference engine. The inference engine is  
12 implicated in at least the claim terms "cell selection means," "netlist generator means," "expert  
13 system means," "inference engine means," "generating control paths," "generating data paths," the  
14 "selecting" step of claim 13, the "applying" steps of claims 18 and 19, and the "generating" steps of  
15 claims 15, 17 and 20.

16 Each and every claim of the '432 patent is invalid as consequence of the inadequate  
17 disclosure described under this heading.

#### 18 **D. Timing Analysis Not Adequately Disclosed**

19 The '432 patent fails to meet the "enablement" requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112, because the  
20 '432 specification does not provide an explanation of how the described CAD system performs  
21 timing analysis of the target design. The '432 specification states that time delay is an important  
22 consideration in doing cell selection. *See* '432 patent, col.8 ll.26-30, col.8 ll.58-64, col.9 ll.52-61.  
23 The '432 specification, however, provides no information as to how the timing constraints on a  
24 design are to be established, how the timing performance of a design is calculated and how timing  
25 delay is then used in cell selection. Without this information it would be impossible for one of  
26 ordinary skill in the art to implement the system described in the specification.

1 The failure to adequately describe the design of the inference engine may additionally  
2 constitute a violation of the best mode requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 112. The applicants claimed to  
3 have a working copy of the KBSC software that is the subject of the '432 patent, but provided  
4 insufficient disclosure of any timing analysis element of that software.

5 Each and every claim of the '432 patent is invalid as consequence of the inadequate  
6 disclosure described under this heading.

7 **E. "Architecture Independent" Lacks Adequate Definition**

8 The '432 patent fails to meet the "written description" requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112. The  
9 phrase "architecture independent" is used in the patent specification to distinguish the claimed  
10 invention from prior art logic synthesis systems. In the file wrapper for the '432 patent the claims of  
11 the '432 patent were distinguished from systems that perform logic synthesis on register transfer  
12 level specifications – and the 4,703,435 patent to Darringer et al. in particular – on the basis of the  
13 "architecture independent" phrase in the '432 patent claims. The phrase "architecture independent"  
14 is capable of a range of meanings, some of which would include register-transfer level descriptions  
15 and the descriptions used in the Darringer patent. Neither the text of the '432 patent nor the file  
16 wrapper, provide any explanation of what meaning this phrase is to have in the context of the '432  
17 patent and claims. The term "architecture independent" appears in each independent claim, and its  
18 use invalidates each of the claims of the patent.

19 In addition, the phrase "architecture independent" introduces new matter to the patent  
20 specification, which is prohibited by 35 U.S.C. § 132. Each and every claim of the '432 patent is  
21 invalid as consequence of the inadequate disclosure described under this heading.

22 **DISCLOSURES UNDER PATENT L.R. 3-3(a) & 3-3(b)**

23 **II. INVALIDITY OF '432 PATENT UNDER 35 U.S.C. § 102(G)**

24 Synopsys and the customer defendants contend that each of the prior art references identified  
25 in Exhibits 1 through 18 attached to this disclosure, are invalidating prior art under 35 U.S.C. §  
26 102(g). The Court's discovery order currently precludes any third party discovery regarding prior art.



1 As a consequence, Synopsys and the customer defendants have not yet been able to assemble  
2 detailed information about the specific person(s) connected with the development of each of the  
3 systems disclosed in exhibits 1 through 18 who have a claim to ownership of the claimed invention  
4 that is superior to Ricoh's. Synopsys does, however, have information regarding the prior  
5 inventorship of the development team that worked on the ancestral Design Compiler system.

6 Properly construed, the claims of the '432 patent do not read on Synopsys' Design Compiler  
7 or related products. If the '432 patent claims are interpreted broadly enough so to encompass the  
8 activities of Synopsys' Design Compiler, then individuals working at General Electric and/or other  
9 research institutions, including U.C. Berkeley, who formed Optimal Solutions and then Synopsys  
10 have a superior claim to inventorship than the named inventors of the '432 patent and their work is  
11 invalidating prior art to the claims of the '432 patent. The individuals who conceived of and  
12 developed the architecture of early GE / Optimal Solutions / Synopsys products included: David  
13 Gregory, Aart de Geus, William Cohen, Karen Bartlett, Karl Garrison, Gary Hachtel, Tim Moore,  
14 Jim Reid, Russell Segal, Rick Rudell, Van Morgen and William Krieger. While each of these people  
15 may be a contributor to such an invention, the actual inventors would be determined by the scope of  
16 each claim as the Court construes it. The original conception of the architecture for GE / Optimal  
17 Solutions / Synopsys products dates back to at least 1984 and 1985. The exact date of conception  
18 and identity of the individuals forming this conception will depend upon how broadly the elements  
19 from the claims of the '432 patent are understood. Furthermore, Synopsys is not claiming that the  
20 individuals identified above are the original inventors of any general architecture relevant to this  
21 case, only that these individuals have a superior claim to inventorship of such an architecture than  
22 the persons named on the '432 patent.

23 Charts describing the application of ancestral versions of Design Compiler to the claims of  
24 Ricoh's patent are attached to this submission. These charts describe how the earliest version of the  
25 Design Compiler product operated and do not describe the operation of current or recent versions of  
26 Design Compiler, almost twenty years later.

### III. INVALIDITY OF '432 PATENT UNDER 35 U.S.C. § 102(a) & (b)

The relevance of various prior art systems will depend upon the construction of the claims.

The discussion below accounts for some, but not all, possible alternative claim constructions.

#### A. "a series of architecture independent actions and conditions" / "a flowchart comprised of elements representing a series of architecture independent actions and conditions"

If claim 13) is interpreted to require the use of a flowchart input constructed from a sequence of nodes describing functions to be performed or conditions to be tested, then the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated under 102(a) and (b) by the following prior art synthesis systems:

- MEGA
- IBM EDS
- CMU DAA

If the "input specification means" of claim 1, "flowchart editor means" of claims 4, 9 and 11, or the "describing" step of claims 13 and 18 are interpreted broadly enough to encompass systems that use Verilog and VHDL descriptions of the target design as design inputs, then the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated by each of the references listed above, as well as:

- SOCRATES
- Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- AT&T DAA
- HAL
- DAGON
- Fujitsu
- CATHEDRAL
- Carleton ELF
- FLAMEL
- CADDY
- CHIPPE
- NTT VLSI-DE
- PLEX
- MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

Charts describing the application of these prior art systems to the claims of Ricoh's patent are attached to this submission.

#### B. "expert system knowledge base / "knowledge base" / "inference engine"

If "expert system knowledge base" and "knowledge base" are properly construed to refer to a knowledge base used in an artificial intelligence expert system containing rules for use with an

inference engine, the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated under 102(a) or (b) by a number of references, including:

- IBM EDS
- CMU DAA
- AT&T DAA
- HAL
- Fujitsu
- CATHEDRAL
- CHIPPE
- NTT VLSI-DE

If "expert system knowledge base" and "knowledge base" are not restricted to the meaning given to knowledge base in the field of artificial intelligence, and are interpreted to encompass any software tool that embodies heuristics or algorithms for logic synthesis, the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated by all of the references given above, plus:

- MEGA
- SOCRATES
- Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- Carleton ELF
- DAGON
- FLAMEL
- CADDY
- PLEX
- MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

**C. "describing for a proposed application specific integrated circuit ..." / "specifying for each described action and condition ..."**

If these claim elements are construed to refer to the process of selecting a series of generic actions and generic conditions followed by the process of identifying the specific action or specific condition intended for each of the generics by selecting an action or condition from a set of possible actions and conditions, the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated under 102(a) or (b) by the following prior art synthesis systems:

- MEGA
- IBM EDS

If these claim elements are construed to refer to any process in which a functional description of a target design is provided as input to a synthesis system, the claims of the '432 patent are anticipated by all of the references given above, plus:

- SOCRATES
- Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- CMU DAA
- AT&T DAA
- HAL
- DAGON
- Fujitsu
- CATHEDRAL
- Carleton ELF
- FLAMEL
- CADDY
- CHIPPE
- NTT VLSI-DE
- PLEX
- MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

**D. “storing a set of definitions of architecture independent actions and conditions” / “a macro library defining a set of architecture independent actions comprised of actions and conditions” / “storing in a macro library a set of macros defining architecture independent actions and conditions”**

One of these phrases appears in claim elements in each of claims 1, 9, 13 and 18. This language is believed to be inapplicable to synthesis systems that parse design inputs having a syntax defined by a language specification. Since Ricoh presumably disputes this, for the purposes of these preliminary invalidity contentions we have assumed a sufficiently broad construction that these claim terms would reach those synthesis systems.

**E. Public Use or Sale**

The following logic synthesis systems are believed to have been in public use more than one year prior to January 13, 1988:

i) IBM EDS

On information and belief, the IBM EDS system was publicly demonstrated at the 20th Design Automation Conference in Miami Beach, Florida in June of 1983, and shown to numerous potential

1 customers that may have hired IBM to produce designs for their ASICs. The system had been used to  
2 make over 90 chip designs by 1984. Synopsys and Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm  
3 these and other public uses and sales.

4 ii) MEGA

5 On information and belief MEGA was a public project at the University of Karlsruhe. A paper  
6 describing this system was published in the Proceedings of the IEEE Int'l Conf. On Computer Aided  
7 Design, which was held in Santa Clara, California in November of 1985. Additionally, there was a  
8 presentation of the MEGA system related to this published paper at the same conference. Synopsys  
9 and Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm these and other public uses and sales.

10 iii) PLEX

11 PLEX was a project at AT&T Bell Labs. This system was published in the Proceedings of the  
12 1983 Int'l Conference on Computer Aided Design in Santa Clara, California. On information and  
13 belief, there were presentations of the PLEX system related to these published papers the 1983  
14 International Conference on Computer Aided Design. PLEX was demonstrated and presented to a  
15 number of interested individuals and/or companies, including at least Coleco and National  
16 Semiconductor, during tours of AT&T Bell Labs prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987. One  
17 such presentation was videotaped and broadcast on television. Such presentations generally included  
18 live demonstrations of the working system or screen shots of the working system. Synopsys and  
19 Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm these and other public uses and sales.

20 iv) SOCRATES

21 On information and belief SOCRATES was demonstrated publicly at the Design Automation  
22 Conference in Las Vegas, Nevada in 1986. Beginning as a GE research project, SOCRATES papers  
23 were published and the system shown to potential customers including CALMA and others prior to the  
24 critical date. GE offered to sell SOCRATES to Optimal Solutions by at least December of 1986 and  
25 sold the software to the new company at its inception, prior to January 13, 1987. Development of  
26 SOCRATES also occurred at public projects at Duke University and the University of Colorado.  
27 Synopsys and Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm these and other public uses and sales.



## v) Berkeley Synthesis System

This is a public project at The University of California at Berkeley. Students and professors used the system and published papers and theses regarding the system. On information and belief the source code for the system was available to public via ftp download prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987 for anyone's use. Individuals from GE, Optimal Solutions used this code in developing aspects of Synopsys' early products.

## vi) DAA – CMU

CMU DAA was a public project at Carnegie Mellon University and sponsored by number of companies. The CMU DAA system was delivered to its sponsors by at least 1987. Students and professors used the system and published papers and theses regarding the system. This system was published in the Proceedings of numerous conferences and symposiums held in the United States including: 20<sup>th</sup> Design Automation Conference held in Miami Beach, Florida, in June 1983; 22<sup>nd</sup> Design Automation Conference in Las Vegas, NV in 1985; and the 1983 Int'l Symposium on Circuits and Systems in Newport Beach, California, in May 1983. On information and belief, there were presentations of the CMU DAA system related to these published papers at their respective conferences. CMU DAA was publicly demonstrated and presented to a number of interested companies prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987. Such presentations included screen shots of the working system. Public benchmarks for comparing automatic logic synthesis systems were also run through the CMU DAA system and the results disseminated. Synopsys and Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm these and other public uses and sales.

## vii) DAA – ATT

AT&T DAA was a public project at AT&T. There were several published papers regarding the system. This system was published in the Proceedings of numerous conferences and symposiums held in the United States including: 23rd Design Automation Conference in Las Vegas, NV in 1986; and the 1986 Int'l Conference on Computer Design in Port Chester, NY in October, 1986. On information and belief, there were presentations of the AT&T DAA system related to these published papers at their respective conferences. AT&T DAA was publicly demonstrated and presented to a number of interested companies prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987. Such presentations

1 included screen shots of the working system. Public benchmarks for comparing automatic logic  
2 synthesis systems were also run through the AT&T DAA system and the results disseminated.  
3 Synopsys and Defendants will proceed with discovery to confirm these and other public uses and sales.

4 viii) Fujitsu DDL/SX

5 Fujitsu DDL/SX was developed at Fujitsu Ltd. in Kawasaki, Japan and implemented LISP and  
6 C-Prolog. This system was published in the Proceedings of numerous conferences and symposiums  
7 including: IFIP Sixth International Symposium on Computer Hardware Description Languages and  
8 their Applications in Pittsburg, Pennsylvania in May 1983; Proceedings of the Fall Joint Computer  
9 Conference 1986, p.979-986, in November 1986 in Dallas, Texas; the 16th Design Automation  
10 Conference held in San Diego, California in June of 1979; 18th Design Automation Conference held  
11 in Nashville, Tennessee in June 1981; the 19th Design Automation Conference held in Las Vegas,  
12 Nevada in June 1982; 23rd Design Automation Conference held in Las Vegas, Nevada in 1986; and  
13 The International Conference On Computer Aided Design in Santa Clara, California in 1985.  
14 Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use,  
15 demonstration, or sale of the system.

16 ix) CHIPPE

17 Chippe was initially developed at the University of Illinois and later at Penn State and the  
18 University of California at Santa Barbara, the work was supported through funding from Gould  
19 Foundation and AT&T Bell Laboratories. Students and professors used the system and published  
20 papers regarding the system. This system was published in the Proceedings of the 23rd Design  
21 Automation Conference held in Las Vegas, NV in June of 1986, and the 24th Design Automation  
22 Conference held in Miami Beach, Florida in June of 1987. On information and belief Chippe was  
23 demonstrated and presented to AT&T prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987. Synopsys and  
24 Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or  
25 sale of the system.

26 x) HAL

27 HAL was developed at Carlton University with funding from BNR and The Natural Sciences  
28 and Engineering Research Counsel of Canada. This system was published in the Proceedings of the  
IEEE Int'l Conf. On Computer Design, which was held in Port Chester, New York in October of 1984

1 and the 23rd Design Automation Conference held in Las Vegas, Nevada in June of 1986. Synopsys  
2 and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use,  
3 demonstration, or sale of the system.

4 xi) NTT VLSI-DE

5 The NTT VLSI-DE system was developed at NTT in Tokyo, Japan, and implemented in LISP.  
6 This system was published in multiple proceedings including the IEEE Int'l Conf. On Computer  
7 Design, which was held in Port Chester, New York in October of 1984. Synopsys and Defendants will  
8 seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the  
9 system.

10 xii) DAGON

11 DAGON was developed at AT&T with influence, and is possibly derives, from SOCRATES  
12 and the Berkeley Synthesis Project. The system was published in the Int'l Conference on Computer-  
13 Aided Design, which was held in Santa Clara, California, in November 9-12, 1986, and the 24th  
14 Design Automation Conference held in Miami Beach, Florida in June of 1987. On information and  
15 belief, DAGON presented to interested companies prior to the critical date of January 13, 1987.  
16 Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use,  
17 demonstration, or sale of the system.

18 xiii) FLAMEL

19 FLAMEL was developed and used at Stanford University under a DARPA contract. Students  
20 and professors used the system and freely published articles and dissertations regarding the  
21 unclassified project by at least the Summer of 1985. Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of  
22 additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the system.

23 xiv) CATHEDRAL

24 Cathedral was jointly developed at the University of California at Berkeley, Phillips Research  
25 Lab, Interuniversity Micro Electronics Center, and Katholieke University, the work was sponsored by  
26 the EC under ESPRIT 97 contract. Students and professors used the system and published papers  
27 regarding the system. This system was published in the Proceedings of the IEEE Int'l Symposium On  
28 Circuits and Systems, which was held in San Jose, California in May of 1986 and the Int'l Conference

on Computer-Aided Design, which was held in Santa Clara, California, in November 9-12, 1987. Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the system.

xv) CADDY

CADDY was developed at University of Karlsruhe with funding from Seimens and the DMFT of Germany. This system was published in multiple proceedings including the IEEE Int'l Conf. On Computer Design, which was held in Port Chester, New York in October of 1984, and the 22nd and 23rd Design Automation Conferences held in Las Vegas, Nevada in 1985 and 1986. There were presentations of the CADDY system related to these published papers at their respective conferences. Additionally, there were presentations of the CADDY system to U.S. corporations including, at least, IBM in 1984 and 1986. Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the system.

xvi) Carelton ELF

ELF was developed at Carlton University with funding from Northern Telecom Electronic and the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Counsel of Canada. This system was published in the Proceedings of the IEEE Int'l Conf. On Computer Design, which was held in Port Chester, New York in October of 1984, and IEEE Int'l Symposium On Circuits and Systems, which was held in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania in May of 1987. Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the system.

xvii) MIMOLA/ VSYNTH

MIMOLA/VSYNTH was developed at Honeywell Inc., in Bloomington, MN and the University of Kiel. Professors and students, and Honeywell used the system and published papers, thesis and manuals regarding the system. This system was published in multiple proceedings including: the 16th Design Automation Conference held in San Diego, California in June of 1979; the 21st Design Automation Conference held in Albuquerque, New Mexico in June 1984; 23rd Design Automation Conference held in Las Vegas, Nevada in 1986; the 17<sup>th</sup> Annual Microprogramming Workshop, held in October and November of 1984 in New Orleans, LA, and the Proceedings of the 20<sup>th</sup> Annual Workshop on Microprogramming held in Colorado Springs, Colorado in December of

1987. Synopsys and Defendants will seek discovery of additional information regarding other public use, demonstration, or sale of the system.

### **DISCLOSURES UNDER PATENT L.R. 3-3(b)**

#### **IV. INVALIDITY OF '432 PATENT UNDER 35 U.S.C. § 103**

##### **A. Combination with References Teaching Flowchart Inputs**

Each of the following claim elements implicates the use of a graphical flowchart system as a vehicle for providing input to a synthesis system:

- "input specification means" (col.14 ll.39-46)
- "specification means"<sup>1</sup> (col.14 l. 67 – col.15 l.2)
- "flowchart editor means" (col.15 ll.8-10)
- "flowchart editor means" (col.15 ll.39-41)
- "macro specification means" (col.15 ll.42-45)
- "flowchart editor means" (col.16 ll.9-17)
- "describing for a proposed application specific integrated circuit ..." (col.16 ll.45-47)
- "specifying for each described action and condition ..." (col.16 ll.48-51)
- "describing for a proposed application specific integrated circuit a flowchart ..." (col.17 l.23 – col.18 l.2)
- "specifying for each described action or condition of said series ..." (col.18 ll.3-5)

The use of a graphical flowchart system as a method for providing input to a synthesis system is taught in the following references:

- A-i. MEGA references
- A-ii. IBM EDS references
- A-iii. [Darringer85]
- A-iv. [Michener71]
- A-v. [Orailoglu86]
- A-vi. [Director81]
- A-vii. [Gustafson82]
- A-viii. [Case81]

The teachings in each and every one of these references individually to use a graphical flowchart system as a method for providing input to a synthesis system could be combined with the synthesis systems described in any one of the following references, individually, to render the claims obvious:

##### **A-1. SOCRATES**

<sup>1</sup> Per certificate of correction.



- A-2. Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- A-3. Ancestral DC
- A-4. CMU DAA
- A-5. AT&T DAA
- A-6. HAL
- A-7. DAGON
- A-8. Fujitsu
- A-9. CATHEDRAL
- A-10. Carleton ELF
- A-11. FLAMEL
- A-12. CADDY
- A-13. CHIPPE
- A-14. NTT VLSI-DE
- A-15. PLEX
- A-16. MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

The motivation to combine these references can be drawn from several sources:

- The extensive cross-citation between articles describing these systems.
- The fact that the literature describing synthesis systems generally recognized that inputs to synthesis systems could take a variety of different forms, including flow graphs and flow charts. See Ex. 19, section 2, *infra*.
- The fact that the literature describing synthesis systems described that they were built as hierarchies of modules and that data produced as output from one module could be supplied as an input to another module within the synthesis system. See Ex. 19, section 7. The outputs of the flowchart input modules of references could, with appropriate modification, be integrated with existing modules of systems A-1 through A-15.
- The [Darringer85] article (A-iii) advocated the use of flowcharts as design inputs for logic synthesis systems. [Darringer85] at xv, xix.
- The [Michener71] article (A-iv) advocated the use of flowcharts as a means of describing a system design. [Michener71] at 42.
- The [Orailoglu86] article (A-v) advocated the use of flow graphs as a design input to silicon compilers, and proposed that behavioral descriptions could be converted to flow graph representations, which would then be provided as input to the silicon compiler. [Orailoglu86] at 506-509.
- The [Director81] article that bluntly acknowledges that it is simply a design choice to provide input through a graphical flowchart or through textual input. [Director81] at 635.

- The [Case81] reference points out the flowchart description for synthesis is a graphic form of a RTL description, and identifies the algorithm for the flowchart translator as previously published information. [Case81] at 637, 2nd col. *See also* [Gustafson82] at 18, 2nd col. and 20, 2nd col.

#### B. Combination with References Teaching Use of An Expert System Knowledge Base

Each of the following claim elements implicates the use of an expert system knowledge base:

- “said cell selection means comprising an expert system including a knowledge base containing rules ...” (col.14 ll.50-59)
- “a knowledge base containing rules for selecting data paths ...” (col.15 ll.20-26)
- “said cell selection means comprising an expert system including a knowledge base containing rules ...” (col.15 ll.49-58)
- “said data path generator means comprising a knowledge base containing rules for selecting data paths ...” (col.15 ll.59-68)
- “a knowledge base containing rules for selecting hardware cells ...” (col.16 ll.21-23)
- “expert system means operable with said knowledge base for translating the flowchart ...” (col.16 ll.24-29)
- “storing in an expert system knowledge base a set of rules for selecting hardware cells ...” (col.16 ll.42-44)
- “applying to the specified definition of the action or condition to be performed, a set of cell selection rules stored in said expert system knowledge base” (col.16 ll.53-65)
- “applying to the selected cells a set of data path rules stored in a knowledge base ...” (col.16 ll.4-7)
- “storing in a knowledge base a set of rules for selecting hardware cells ...” (col.17 ll.19-22)
- “applying rules of said knowledge base to the specified macros to select from said cell library the hardware cells required ...” (col.18 ll.6-14)
- “storing in said knowledge base a set of rules for creating data paths between hardware cells” (col.18 ll.17-18)
- “applying rules of said knowledge base to the specified means to create data paths for the selected hardware cells” (col.18 ll.19-21)

The use of an expert system knowledge base incorporating rules for use with an inference engine for selecting cells, synthesizing data paths and synthesizing control structures, is taught in the following references:

- B-i. IBM EDS
- B-ii. CMU DAA
- B-iii. AT&T DAA
- B-iv. HAL
- B-v. Fujitsu DDL/SX
- B-vi. CATHEDRAL

- B-vii. CHIPPE
- B-viii. NTT VLSI-DE
- B-ix. [Rosenstiel86b]
- B-x. [Brewer86]
- B-xi. [Gajski84]
- B-xii. [Birmingham86]
- B-xiii. [Wolf86]

The teachings in each and every one of these references, individually, above to use an inference engine with a knowledgebase incorporating rules to select cells, synthesize data paths and control structures, could be combined with the synthesis systems described in any one of the following references, individually, to render the claim obvious:

- B-1. MEGA
- B-2. SOCRATES
- B-3. Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- B-4. Ancestral DC
- B-5. Carleton ELF
- B-6. DAGON
- B-7. FLAMEL
- B-8. CADDY
- B-9. PLEX

If the claim construction is so broad as to not require the use of an expert system inference engine, then SOCRATES taught the use of an expert system knowledge base incorporating rules as described and would render the claim invalid without combination.

The motivation to combine these references can be drawn from several sources:

- The extensive cross-citation between publications cited in this report describing these systems.
- The [Rosenstiel86b] article advocated the use of knowledge-based expert systems in synthesis systems. See, e.g., [Rosenstiel86] at 248-249, 254-255.
- The [Birmingham86] article advocated the application of knowledge-based expert systems to synthesis. See, e.g., [Birmingham86] at 533-534.
- The [Wolf86] describes knowledge base for module selection by expert system [Wolf86] at 867-869.

- Other publications cited in section 3 of Exhibit 19 on the literature describing synthesis systems taught that expert systems and rule bases were an appropriate and useful method for controlling the synthesis process, selecting cells, synthesizing datapaths and control paths. See Ex. 19, section 3.

#### C. Combination with References Teaching Datapath and Control Generation

Each of the following claim elements implicates the generation of data paths and/or control circuitry:

- “data path generator means” (col.15 ll.16-19)
- “a knowledge base containing rules for selecting data paths ...” (col.15 ll.20-26)
- “control generator means” (col.15 ll.28-31)
- “data path generator means” (col.15 ll.59-68)
- “control generator means” (col.16 ll.1-4)
- “generating data paths for the selected integrated circuit hardware cells” (col.17 ll.8-10)
- “storing in said knowledge base a set of rules for creating data paths ...” (col.18 ll.17-18)
- “applying rules of said knowledge base to the specified means to create data paths for the selected hardware cells” (col.18 ll.19-21)
- “steps of generating a controller and generating control paths ...” (col.18 ll.22-24)

The use of a synthesis process to generate both data paths and control circuitry is taught in the following references:

- C-i. MEGA
- C-ii. CMU DAA
- C-iii. AT&T DAA
- C-iv. HAL
- C-v. FLAMEL
- C-vi. CATHEDRAL
- C-vii. CADDY
- C-viii. CHIPPE
- C-ix. NTT VLSI-DE
- C-x. Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- C-xi. Ancestral DC
- C-xii. Carleton ELF
- C-xiii. IBM EDS
- C-xiv. PLEX
- C-xv. Fujitsu
- C-xvi. MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

1 C-xvii. [Thomas81]  
 2 C-xviii. [Shiva83]  
 3 C-xix. [Parker84]  
 4 C-xx. [Rosenstiel86c]

5 The teachings in each and every one of the references, individually, above to generate both data paths  
 6 and control circuitry could be combined with the synthesis systems described in any one of the  
 7 following references, individually, to render the claims obvious:

8 C-1. SOCRATES  
 9 C-2. DAGON

10 The motivation to combine these references can be drawn from several sources:

- 11 ■ The extensive cross-citation between publications cited in this report describing these  
 12 systems.
- 13 ■ The fact that the literature describing synthesis systems, described that both datapaths and  
 14 control logic could be generated by the synthesis process. See Ex. 19, section 6, *infra*.
- 15 ■ The [Thomas81] article describes that designs include both control and data flow components  
 16 and that the task of synthesis is to convert high level behavioral descriptions of each of these  
 17 into logical or physical structures for both control and data flow circuitry. See, e.g.,  
 18 [Thomas81] at 1201-1203, FIGS. 1, 6.
- 19 ■ The [Shiva83] article describes that hardware synthesis includes synthesis of both data path  
 20 and control functions. See, e.g., [Shiva83] at 76-77.
- 21 ■ The [Parker84] article teaches that synthesis includes elements of both data path synthesis  
 22 and control synthesis. See, e.g., [Parker84] at 77-78.
- 23 ■ The [Rosenstiel86c] article teaches that synthesis includes components of data path synthesis  
 24 and control synthesis. See, e.g., [Rosenstiel86c] at 36, 38.

#### 25 **D. Combination with References Teaching Simulation.**

26 Each of the following claim elements implicates functional simulation of the design input:

- 27 ■ “flowchart simulator means” (col.15 ll.12-15)

28 The use of a functional simulator for simulating the behavior of a flowchart design input to a  
 synthesis system is taught in the following references:

D-i. MEGA



## D-ii. IBM EDS

The teachings in each and every one of the references above, individually, to include simulators in a synthesis system to allow for simulation of the design input could be combined with the synthesis systems described in anyone of the following references, individually, to render the claims obvious:

- D-1. SOCRATES
- D-2. Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- D-3. Ancestral DC
- D-4. CMU DAA
- D-5. AT&T DAA
- D-6. HAL
- D-7. DAGON
- D-8. Fujitsu
- D-9. CATHEDRAL
- D-10. Carleton ELF
- D-11. FLAMEL
- D-12. CADDY
- D-13. CHIPPE
- D-14. NTT VLSI-DE
- D-15. PLEX
- D-16. Berkeley SYNTHESIS SYSTEM
- D-17. MIMOLA & V-SYNTH

The motivation to combine these references can be drawn from several sources:

- The extensive cross-citation between articles describing these systems.
- The fact that the literature describing synthesis systems as a whole, described that simulation could be used to verify the functional characteristics of a design input. See Ex. 19, section 2a.
- Most of the references described above included functional simulators for evaluating the functional performance of the design input to the synthesis process. If graphical flowcharts were to be used as a design input to the systems, it would be obvious to provide a simulator for these inputs as well. See the passages identified corresponding to claim 5 in the charts for: CMU-DAA, HAL, DAGON, CATHEDRAL, NTT VLSI-DE.

**E. Mask Generation Was Obvious At The Time of the Invention To A Person of Ordinary Skill in the Art.**

Each of the following claim elements implicates the generation of mask data from the netlist output of the synthesis system:

- “mask data generator means” (col.15 ll.3-7)
- “mask data generator means” (col.16 ll.30-33)
- “generating from the netlist the mask data required ...” (col.16 ll.66-68)

As the patent itself describes: “Computer-aided design systems for cell placement and routing are commercially available which will receive netlist data as input and will lay out the respective cells in the chip, generate the necessary routing, and produce mask data which can be directly used by a chip foundry in the fabrication of integrated circuits.” [‘432 patent, col.5 ll.40-46]

Other references also demonstrate that the production of mask data was a standard element in the process of implementing semiconductor devices. This fact is established by [Mead80] at 92-98, [Gajski85] at 54.

#### **DISCLOSURES UNDER PATENT L.R. 3-4**

##### **A. Patent L.R. 3-4(a)**

Ricoh has failed to provide an identification of the accused instrumentality, which is “as specific as possible”, as required by Patent L.R. 3-1(b). Despite Ricoh’s failure to comply with Patent L.R. 3-1(b), Synopsys has produced internal engineering documents describing the design of its Design Compiler software and related products. In addition, the parties have agreed on terms under which Ricoh may review Synopsys’ source code for its Design Compiler software.

##### **B. Patent L.R. 3-4(b)**

Synopsys has produced copies of the relevant prior art identified in this document and in the charts attached hereto.

Dated: July 7, 2004

Respectfully submitted,

By:

  
Christopher L. Kelley (SBN 166608)

Attorneys for Plaintiff SYNOPSYS, INC.  
and for Defendants and Counterclaimants  
AEROFLEX INCORPORATED, AMI  
SEMICONDUCTOR, MATROX  
GRAPHICS, INC., MATROX  
INTERNATIONAL CORPORATION,  
MATROX ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS,  
LTD. and MATROX TECH, INC.

**CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE**

I am employed in the County of San Mateo, State of California. I am over the age of eighteen (18) years and not a party to the within action; my business address is 301 Ravenswood Avenue, Menlo Park, California 94025-3434.

On July 7, 2004, at my place of business, I caused a true and correct copy of the document described as:

**SUPPLEMENTAL PRELIMINARY INVALIDITY CONTENTIONS OF  
SYNOPSIS AND THE CUSTOMER DEFENDANTS  
PURSUANT TO PATENT L.R. 3-3 AND L.R. 3-4**

to be served on the parties in this action addressed as follows:

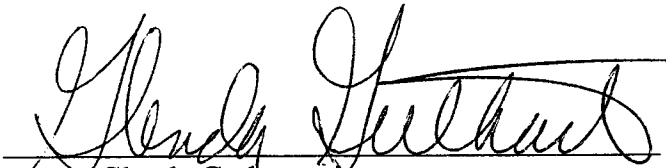
**VIA FEDEX**

**Kenneth W. Brothers  
Dickstein Shapiro Morin & Oshinsky, LLP  
2101 L Street NW  
Washington, DC 20037**

I declare that I am employed in the office of a member of the Bar of this Court at whose direction this service was made.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of California and under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct. Executed at Menlo Park, California on July 7, 2004.

  
Glenda Guthart